

# CONSERVED ENERGIES FOR THE ONE DIMENSIONAL GROSS-PITAEVSKII EQUATION

HERBERT KOCH AND XIAN LIAO

ABSTRACT. We prove the global-in-time well-posedness of the one dimensional Gross-Pitaevskii equation in the energy space, which is a complete metric space equipped with a newly introduced metric and with the energy norm describing the  $H^s$  regularities of the solutions. We establish a family of conserved energies for the one dimensional Gross-Pitaevskii equation, such that the energy norms of the solutions are conserved globally in time. This family of energies is also conserved by the complex modified Korteweg-de Vries flow.

*Keywords:* Gross-Pitaevskii equation, modified Korteweg-de Vries equation, well-posedness, transmission coefficient, conserved energies, metric space

*AMS Subject Classification (2010):* 35Q55, 37K10

## CONTENTS

1. Introduction	2
2. Local well-posedness	9
3. The transmission coefficient	16
3.1. A Riemann surface	16
3.2. Jost solutions and the transmission coefficient	17
3.3. Notations	19
3.4. Asymptotic expansion of the transmission coefficient $T^{-1}$	20
3.5. The renormalised transmission coefficient $T_c^{-1}$	21
4. Proof of Theorem 3.1	23
4.1. Function spaces	23
4.2. The renormalised transmission coefficient	24
4.3. Superharmonic function $G$ on the upper half-plane	29
5. The energies	29
5.1. The framework	30
5.2. Trace formula and the organisation of the section	32
5.3. High order terms	34
5.4. Low order terms	38
5.5. The energies	42
6. The metric space	43
6.1. The metric structure	44
6.2. The analytic structure	50
Appendix A. Calculation of the quadratic term	55
References	57

## 1. INTRODUCTION

We consider the one dimensional Gross-Pitaevskii equation

$$(1.1) \quad i\partial_t q + \partial_{xx} q = 2q(|q|^2 - 1),$$

where  $(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  denote the time and space variables and  $q = q(t, x) : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \mapsto \mathbb{C}$  denotes the unknown complex-valued wave function.

It was used by E.P. Gross [21] and L.P. Pitaevskii [35] to describe the oscillations of a Bose gas at zero temperature. In nonlinear optics, the equation (1.1) models the propagation of a monochromatic wave in a defocusing medium and in particular the dark/black solitons with  $|q| = 1$  at infinity arise as solutions of (1.1). See the review paper [29] for more physical interpretations.

The Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) can be viewed as the defocusing cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS), but with a nonstandard boundary condition at infinity:  $|q| \rightarrow 1$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ . This nonzero boundary condition brings a substantial difference between (1.1) and (NLS) (for which we assume zero boundary condition at infinity): For example, the former equation has soliton solutions (e.g. the black soliton solution  $q(t, x) = \tanh(x)$ ) while the latter equation possesses scattering phenomenon. One will see below that the solution space for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) is much more delicate and we will derive a family of conserved energies which describe all the  $H^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  regularities of the solutions in a nonstandard way.

The equation (1.1) can be viewed as a Hamiltonian evolutionary equation associated to the Ginzburg-Landau energy

$$(1.2) \quad \mathcal{E}_{GL}(q) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} ( (|q|^2 - 1)^2 + |\partial_x q|^2 ) dx,$$

with respect to the symplectic form  $\omega(u, v) = \text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}} u \bar{v} dx$ . P.E. Zhidkov [38] proved the local-in-time well-posedness of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) in the so-called Zhidkov's space  $Z^k$ ,  $k = 1, 2, \dots$ , which is the closure of the space  $\{q \in C^k(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \mid \partial_x q \in H^{k-1}(\mathbb{R})\}$  for the norm

$$(1.3) \quad \|q\|_{Z^k} = \|q\|_{L^\infty} + \sum_{1 \leq l \leq k} \|\partial_x^l q\|_{L^2},$$

and in particular when  $k = 1$ , under the initial finite-energy assumption  $\mathcal{E}_{GL}(q_0) < \infty$ , the finite-energy solution exists globally in time. See also [3, 6, 15, 16, 38, 39] for more results in the  $n$ -dimensional case, with  $Z^k = Z^k(\mathbb{R})$  above replaced by  $Z^k(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,  $k > \frac{n}{2}$ . In dimension  $n = 2$  or  $3$ , P. Gérard [17] showed the global-in-time well-posedness of (1.1) in the energy space  $Y^1 = \{q \in H_{\text{loc}}^1(\mathbb{R}^n) : |q|^2 - 1 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n), \nabla q \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)\}$ , endowed with the metric distance

$$d_{Y^1}(p, q) = \|p - q\|_{Z^1 + H^1} + \| |p|^2 - |q|^2 \|_{L^2},$$

$$\text{with } \|u\|_{A+B} = \inf\{\|u_1\|_A + \|u_2\|_B \mid u = u_1 + u_2, u_1 \in A, u_2 \in B\},$$

and more topological properties of this complete metric space  $Y^1$  can be found in [18]. Particular attention has been paid to show the existence (or non-existence) of the travelling wave solutions in [7, 10, 20, 34] and there is also rich literature contributed to their stability or instability issues: See [4, 5, 32] and the references therein. Most authors in the study of the stability issues adopt the following metric distance in the energy space:

$$d_E(p, q) = \|p - q\|_{L^2(\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x| \leq 1\})} + \| |p|^2 - |q|^2 \|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)} + \|\nabla p - \nabla q\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)}.$$

In higher dimensional case  $n \geq 4$ , [22] (see [23] for the results when  $n = 2, 3$ ) established the scattering theory for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation with the initial data of form  $1 + \varphi$  and  $\varphi \in H^s$ ,  $s \geq \frac{n}{2} - 1$  sufficiently small.

In this paper we take the general *energy spaces* as follows

$$(1.4) \quad X^s = \{q \in H_{\text{loc}}^s(\mathbb{R}) : |q|^2 - 1 \in H^{s-1}(\mathbb{R}), \quad \partial_x q \in H^{s-1}(\mathbb{R})\} / \mathbb{S}^1, \quad s \geq 0,$$

where  $\mathbb{S}^1$  denotes the unit circle, i.e. we identify functions which differ by a multiplicative constant of modulus 1. Recall that for  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ , the Sobolev space  $H^s(\mathbb{R})$  consists of tempered distributions  $f$  with finite  $H^s(\mathbb{R})$ -norm which is defined as follows:

$$\|f\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R})} = \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} (1 + \xi^2)^s |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi \right)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

where  $\hat{f}(\xi)$  denotes the Fourier transform of  $f(x)$ . We endow the set of functions  $X^s$  with the following metric  $d^s(\cdot, \cdot)$ <sup>1</sup>:

$$(1.5) \quad d^s(p, q) = \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \|\text{sech}(\cdot - y)(\lambda p - q)\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R})}^2 dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

where  $\text{sech}(x) = \frac{2}{e^x + e^{-x}}$ <sup>2</sup> and we will prove in Section 6 the following theorem:

**Theorem 1.1.** *Let  $X^s$ ,  $d^s(\cdot, \cdot)$ ,  $s \geq 0$  be defined in (1.4) and (1.5). Then the space  $(X^s, d^s(\cdot, \cdot))$  is a complete metric space, with the following topological properties:*

- *The subset  $\{q \mid |q| - 1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R})\}$  is dense in  $X^s$  and hence  $(X^s, d^s(\cdot, \cdot))$  is separable.*
- *Any ball  $B_r^s(q) = \{p \in X^s \mid d^s(p, q) < r\}$ ,  $r \in \mathbb{R}^+$ ,  $q \in X^s$ , in  $X^s$  is contractible.*
- *Any set  $\{q \in H_{\text{loc}}^s(\mathbb{R}) : \|\partial_x q\|_{H^{s-1}} + \||q|^2 - 1\|_{H^{s-1}} < C\}$  is contained in some ball  $B_r^s(1)$  with  $r$  depending on  $C$ .*
- *Any closed ball  $\overline{B_r^s(q)}$  in  $X^s$ ,  $s > 0$  is weakly sequentially compact.*
- *There is an analytic structure on  $X^s$  (see Theorem 6.2 for details).*

In the following we will define the solution of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1). The initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$  has a representative  $\tilde{q}_0$ . A solution  $q(t, \cdot) \in X^s$  with  $t \in I$  the time interval will be the projections of some function in  $t$ :  $\tilde{q}(t, \cdot) \in X^s$ . We define the notion of a solution in terms of the representative.

**Definition 1.1** (Solutions). *We call  $q \in \mathcal{C}(I; X^s)$ ,  $s \geq 0$  to be a solution of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) with the initial data  $q|_{t=0} = q_0 \in X^s$  on the open time interval  $I \ni 0$ , if there is  $\tilde{q} : I \rightarrow H_{\text{loc}}^s$  which satisfies that*

$$(1.6) \quad I \ni t \rightarrow \tilde{q}(t) - \tilde{q}(0) \in L^2,$$

*is weakly continuous and*

$$(1.7) \quad \|\tilde{q}(\cdot) - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}\|_{L^4([a,b] \times \mathbb{R})} \leq C,$$

*for some regularized initial data  $\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}$  of  $\tilde{q}(0)$  and all  $0 \in [a, b] \subset I$ , such that the equation (1.1) holds in the distributional sense on  $I \times \mathbb{R}$  and  $\tilde{q}(t)$  projects to  $q(t)$ .*

We have the following well-posedness results.

<sup>1</sup>If  $p, q \in X^s$ , then we indeed have  $\||p|^2 - |q|^2\|_{H^{s-1}(\mathbb{R})} \leq cd^s(p, q)$  by (6.10) below.

<sup>2</sup>We can take any other strictly positive smooth function which decays fast at infinity instead of  $\text{sech}(x)$ .

**Theorem 1.2.** *Let  $s \geq 0$ . The Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) is locally-in-time well-posed in the metric space  $(X^s, d^s)$  in the following sense: For any initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ , there exists a positive time  $\bar{t} \in (0, \infty)$  and a unique local-in-time solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}((-\bar{t}, \bar{t}); X^s)$  of (1.1) and for any  $t \in (0, \bar{t})$ , the Gross-Pitaevskii flow map  $X^s \ni q_0 \mapsto q \in \mathcal{C}([-t, t]; X^s)$  is continuous. Let  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ , then the above holds for all  $\bar{t} \in \mathbb{R}^+$  and hence the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) is globally-in-time well-posed in the metric space  $(X^s, d^s)$ .*

**Remark 1.1.** *Compared with the distance function  $d^s$  introduced for the nonlinear energy space  $X^s$  here, the Zhidkov's norm  $\|\cdot\|_{Z^k}$  or the metric  $d_{Y^1}$  is more rigid and the subset  $\{v \mid v - 1 \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})\}$  is not dense in  $Z^k$  or  $Y^1$ . The known global well-posedness result in  $Z^1$  does not cover the above global well-posedness result in  $X^1$ .*

The equation (1.1) is completely integrable by means of the inverse scattering method. According to the seminal paper by Zakharov-Shabat [37], the equation (1.1) can be viewed as the compatibility condition for the two systems

$$(1.8) \quad \begin{aligned} u_x &= \begin{pmatrix} -i\lambda & q \\ \bar{q} & i\lambda \end{pmatrix} u, \\ u_t &= i \begin{pmatrix} -2\lambda^2 - (|q|^2 - 1) & -2i\lambda q + \partial_x q \\ -2i\lambda\bar{q} - \partial_x\bar{q} & 2\lambda^2 + (|q|^2 - 1) \end{pmatrix} u, \end{aligned}$$

where  $u : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \mapsto \mathbb{C}^2$  is the unknown vector and  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  can be viewed as parameter. More precisely, if we fix  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  then the (1.1) is the compatibility condition. On the other hand, if (1.1) holds then the compatibility condition is satisfied for all complex numbers  $\lambda$ . The first system in (1.8) can be written in the form of a spectral problem  $Lu = \lambda u$  of the so-called Lax operator

$$(1.9) \quad L = \begin{pmatrix} i\partial_x & -iq \\ i\bar{q} & -i\partial_x \end{pmatrix},$$

and correspondingly the second system of (1.8) reads as a differential operator as follows (by eliminating  $\lambda$  using the relation  $\lambda u = Lu$ )

$$P = i \begin{pmatrix} 2\partial_x^2 - (|q|^2 - 1) & -q\partial_x - \partial_x q \\ \bar{q}\partial_x + \partial_x\bar{q} & -2\partial_x^2 + (|q|^2 - 1) \end{pmatrix}.$$

A formal calculation shows that  $q(t, x)$  solves the equation (1.1) if and only if there holds the operator evolution equation  $L_t = [P; L] := PL - LP$ , i.e. the two operators  $(L, P)$  form the so-called Lax-pair, which *formally* implies the invariance of the spectra of  $L$  by time evolution. Indeed, let the skewadjoint operator  $P$  generate a unitary family of evolution operators  $U(t', t)$ , then

$$L(t) = U^*(t', t)L(t')U(t', t)$$

and  $L(t)$  and  $L(t')$  are similar. The inverse scattering transform relates the evolution of the Gross-Pitaevskii flow to the study of the spectral and scattering property of the Lax operator  $L$ . In the classical framework where  $q - 1$  is Schwartz function, the self-adjoint operator  $L$  has essential spectrum  $(-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty)$  and at most countably many *simple real* eigenvalues  $\{\lambda_m\}$  on  $(-1, 1)$ . See [1, 11, 12, 13, 14, 19, 37] for more discussions between the potential  $q$  and the spectral information of  $L$ .

It is interesting to notice that the *complex* defocusing modified Korteweg-de Vries equation

$$(1.10) \quad \psi_t + \psi_{xxx} - 6|\psi|^2\psi_x = 0, \quad \psi : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C},$$

possesses also a Lax-pair structure and shares the same Lax operator (1.9):  $L_{\text{mKdV}} = \begin{pmatrix} i\partial_x & -i\psi \\ i\bar{\psi} & -i\partial_x \end{pmatrix}$  as the Gross-Pitaevskii equation, although the corresponding matrix/operator  $P$  reads differently as

$$(1.11) \quad P_{\text{mKdV}} = \begin{pmatrix} -4i\lambda^3 - 2i\lambda|\psi|^2 + (\bar{\psi}\psi_x - \psi\bar{\psi}_x) & 4\lambda^2\psi + 2i\lambda\psi_x - \psi_{xx} + 2|\psi|^2\psi \\ 4\lambda^2\bar{\psi} - 2i\lambda\bar{\psi}_x - \bar{\psi}_{xx} + 2|\psi|^2\bar{\psi} & 4i\lambda^3 + 2i\lambda|\psi|^2 - (\bar{\psi}\psi_x - \psi\bar{\psi}_x) \end{pmatrix}.$$

In this paper we focus on the first system in (1.8), i.e. the spectral problem  $Lu = \lambda u$  for the Lax operator  $L$ . It is not hard to see that  $L$  is selfadjoint. We study in particular the *time-independent* transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}(\lambda)$  associated to it. For the cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation case, Koch-Tataru [31] (see also [28]) made use of the corresponding invariant transmission coefficient to establish a family of conserved energies which are equivalent to the  $H^s$ ,  $s > -\frac{1}{2}$ -norms of the solutions and hence all the  $H^s$ -regularities are preserved a priori for regular initial data. We will adopt the idea in [31] to formulate the conserved energies for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) and the defocusing modified Korteweg-de Vries equation (1.10).

The first obstacles on the way are the mass  $\mathcal{M}$  and momentum  $\mathcal{P}$ :

$$(1.12) \quad \mathcal{M} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1) dx, \quad \mathcal{P} = \text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}} q \partial_x \bar{q} dx,$$

which are only well-defined under more integrability assumptions on  $|q|^2 - 1, \partial_x q$ , rather than the mere  $L^2$ -type boundedness assumptions for  $q \in X^s$ . In the classical setting where  $(q - 1)$  is a Schwartz function, we have the following expansion for the logarithm of the transmission coefficient (see [14]): There exist countably many *real* numbers  $\{\mathcal{H}^n\}_{n \geq 0}$  such that for any  $k \geq 1$ ,

$$(1.13) \quad \ln T^{-1}(\lambda) = i \sum_{l=0}^{k-1} \mathcal{H}^l (2z)^{-l-1} + (\ln T^{-1}(\lambda))^{\geq k+1}, \quad \text{Im } \lambda > 0,$$

with  $|(\ln T^{-1}(\lambda))^{\geq k+1}| = O(|\lambda|^{-k-1})$  as  $|\lambda| \rightarrow \infty$ ,

where  $(\lambda, z)$  stays on the upper sheet of a Riemann surface  $\{(\lambda, z) \in \mathbb{C}^2 \mid \lambda^2 - z^2 = 1, \text{Im } z > 0\}$  (see Subsection 3.1 for more details). We also have the corresponding expansion for  $\ln T^{-1}(\lambda)$  as  $|\lambda| \rightarrow \infty$  for  $\text{Im } \lambda < 0$ , by use of the symmetry  $\ln T^{-1}(\lambda) = \overline{\ln T^{-1}(\bar{\lambda})}$ . The first three coefficients  $\mathcal{H}^0, \mathcal{H}^1, \mathcal{H}^2$  in (1.13) are the conserved mass, momentum and energy (see (1.2)) for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) (and hence also for the mKdV (1.10)) respectively:

$$\mathcal{H}^0 = \mathcal{M}, \quad \mathcal{H}^1 = \mathcal{P}, \quad \mathcal{H}^2 = 2\mathcal{E}_{GL} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1)^2 + |\partial_x q|^2 dx,$$

and the fourth conserved Hamiltonian  $\mathcal{H}^3$  reads (see also Remark 5.1)

$$\mathcal{H}^3 = \text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (\partial_x q \partial_{xx} \bar{q} + 3(|q|^2 - 1)q \partial_x \bar{q}) dx - \mathcal{P}.$$

The momentum  $\mathcal{P}$  is not defined on  $X^s$  for any  $s \geq 0$  and hence in our  $L^2$ -framework  $q \in X^s$  we have to consider the *renormalised* transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  which will be  $T^{-1}(\lambda)$  modulo the mass and momentum (see Theorem 3.1 below for more details).

In contrast to the Nonlinear Schrödinger equation we cannot scale solutions of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation because of the boundary condition at infinity. Hence there is no scaling invariance property for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation and it does not suffice to consider small data. In order to handle the large energy case we introduce the frequency-rescaled Sobolev norm  $H_\tau^s(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $\tau \geq 2$  which is equivalent to  $H^s(\mathbb{R})$ -norm as follows <sup>3</sup>

$$(1.14) \quad \|f\|_{H_\tau^s(\mathbb{R})}^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}} (\tau^2 + \xi^2)^s |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi.$$

For any  $q \in X^s$ , we introduce the following notation

$$(1.15) \quad \mathbf{q} := (|q|^2 - 1, \partial_x q), \text{ with } \|\mathbf{q}\|_{H_\tau^s(\mathbb{R})}^2 = \||q|^2 - 1\|_{H_\tau^s(\mathbb{R})}^2 + \|\partial_x q\|_{H_\tau^s(\mathbb{R})}^2,$$

and we define the associated *energy*  $E_\tau^s(q)$  as

$$(1.16) \quad E_\tau^s(q) := \|\mathbf{q}\|_{H_\tau^{s-1}(\mathbb{R})},$$

which describes the  $H^s$ -regularity of  $q$  and in particular when  $\tau = 2$  we denote simply

$$(1.17) \quad E^s(q) := E_2^s(q).$$

We also introduce the Banach space  $l_\tau^2 DU^2 = DU^2 + \tau^{\frac{1}{2}} L^2 \supset H^{s-1}$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  (which can be viewed as a replacement of  $H^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  and see Subsection 4.1 below for more details) and the norm

$$\|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} = \left( \||q|^2 - 1\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2}^2 + \|\partial_x q\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

It is straightforward to check that the  $H_\tau^s(\mathbb{R})$ -norm and the  $l_\tau^2 DU^2(\mathbb{R})$ -norm have the following scaling invariance property:

$$(1.18) \quad \|f\|_{H_\tau^s(\mathbb{R})} = \tau^{s+\frac{1}{2}} \|f_\tau\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R})}, \quad \|f\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2(\mathbb{R})} = \|f_\tau\|_{l_1^2 DU^2(\mathbb{R})}, \quad f_\tau = \frac{1}{\tau} f\left(\frac{\cdot}{\tau}\right).$$

We establish a family of conserved energy functionals  $(\mathcal{E}_\tau^s)_{\tau \geq 2}$  as follows:

**Theorem 1.3.** *Let  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ . There exist a constant  $C \geq 2$  (depending only on  $s$ ) and a family of analytic energy functionals  $(\mathcal{E}_\tau^s)_{\tau \geq 2} : X^s \mapsto [0, \infty)$ , such that*

- $\mathcal{E}_\tau^s(q)$  is equivalent to  $(E_\tau^s(q))^2$  in the following sense:

$$(1.19) \quad \begin{aligned} |\mathcal{E}_\tau^s(q) - (E_\tau^s(q))^2| &\leq \frac{C}{\tau} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} (E_\tau^s(q))^2, \\ \text{if } q \in X^s \text{ such that } \frac{1}{\tau} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} &< \frac{1}{2C}, \end{aligned}$$

- $\mathcal{E}_\tau^s(\cdot)$ ,  $\tau \geq 2$  is conserved by the one-dimensional Gross-Pitaevskii flow (1.1).

---

<sup>3</sup> $\tau^{-s} \|f\|_{H_\tau^s}$  is the semiclassical Sobolev norm  $(\int_{\mathbb{R}} (1 + (h\xi)^2)^s |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi)^{1/2}$ ,  $h = \tau^{-1}$ . We always take  $\tau \geq 2$  in the frequency-rescaled Sobolev norms, in order to avoid the possible zeros on  $(-1, 1)$  of the transmission coefficient in the formulation of the conserved energies (see (5.3) below).

Correspondingly, for any initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ , there exists  $\tau_0 \geq C$  depending only on  $E^s(q_0)$  such that the unique solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}(\mathbb{R}; X^s)$  (given in Theorem 1.2) of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) satisfies the following energy conservation law:

$$(1.20) \quad E_{\tau_0}^s(q(t)) \leq 2E_{\tau_0}^s(q_0), \quad \frac{1}{\tau_0} \|\mathbf{q}(t)\|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 DU^2} < \frac{1}{2C}, \quad \forall t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

**Remark 1.2.** 1) One can find the precise definition and the trace formula of the energies  $\mathcal{E}_\tau^s(q)$  in Theorem 5.1.

For example, we have the following trace formula for the conserved energies  $\mathcal{E}_\tau^s(q)$  when  $s = n \geq 1$  is an integer (recalling  $\mathcal{H}^l$  in (1.13))

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_\tau^n(q) &= \sum_{l=0}^{n-1} \tau^{2(n-1-l)} \binom{n-1}{l} \mathcal{H}^{2l+2}, \\ \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \xi^{2l+2} \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \ln |T_c^{-1}|(\pm \sqrt{\xi^2/4 + 1}) d\xi - \frac{1}{2l+3} \sum_m \operatorname{Im}(2z_m)^{2l+3}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $T_c^{-1}$  is the renormalised transmission coefficient defined for any  $q \in X^s$  in Theorem 3.1 and  $z_m = i\sqrt{1 - \lambda_m^2} \in i(0, 1]$  with  $\{\lambda_m\}_m \subset (-1, 1)$  being the possible countably many zeros of the holomorphic function  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  and hence the possible eigenvalues of the Lax operator  $L$ .

In particular if  $q - 1 \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ , then by changing of variables  $\xi \rightarrow \lambda$  with  $\lambda^2 = \xi^2 + 1$  and noticing the symmetry in Subsection 3.2.2:  $\ln |T^{-1}|(\lambda + i0) = \ln |T^{-1}|(\lambda - i0)$  for  $\lambda \in \mathcal{I}_{cut} = (-\infty, 1] \cup [1, \infty)$ ,

$$\mathcal{H}^{2l+2} = \frac{2^{2l+3}}{\pi} \int_{\mathcal{I}_{cut}} |\lambda| \sqrt{\lambda^2 - 1}^{2l+1} \ln |T^{-1}|(\lambda) d\lambda - \frac{1}{2l+3} \sum_m \operatorname{Im}(2z_m)^{2l+3},$$

for  $l \geq 0$ . This can be compared with  $2^{2l+3} c_{2l+3, \varrho}$  on Pages 76 in [14].

2) For any ball  $B_r^s(q_0) = \{p_0 \in X^s \mid d^s(q_0, p_0) < r\}$ ,  $r > 0$ , in  $X^s$  such that (see Lemma 6.1 below) for any  $p_0 \in B_r^s(q_0)$ ,

$$E^s(p_0) \leq E^s(q_0) + c(1 + E^s(q_0))^{\frac{1}{2}} d^s(q_0, p_0) + c(d^s(q_0, p_0))^2 \leq C(E^s(q_0), r),$$

there exists  $\tau_0$  (depending only on  $E^s(q_0), r$ ) such that all the solutions  $p \in \mathcal{C}(\mathbb{R}; X^s)$  of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) with the corresponding initial data  $p_0 \in B_r^s(q_0)$  satisfy the energy conservation law (1.20).

3) The idea of the proof of Theorem 1.3 is similar as in [31], however due to the nonzero background, the proof requires substantial new ideas and concepts and the characterised quantities in the energy space are the nonlinear function of  $q$ :  $|q|^2 - 1$  and its derivative  $q'$  rather than the solution  $q$  itself.

4) In the proof showing the asymptotic approximation of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation by the Korteweg-de Vries equations in long-wave regime, [6] made use of the uniform bounds of  $E^k(q)$ ,  $k = 1, 2, 3, 4$  which were derived from a linear (and not obvious at all) combination of the first nine energy conservation laws  $\mathcal{H}^0, \dots, \mathcal{H}^8$ . Theorem 1.3 here is a first existence result of infinitely many conserved quantities which control  $E^k(q)$ ,  $k = 1, 2, \dots$  of the solutions of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (and  $m\text{KdV}$  with the same boundary condition at  $\infty$ ).

We also have the following results for the modified KdV equation (1.10). We recall that we define wellposedness in terms of the existence of a representative.

**Theorem 1.4.** *The complex modified KdV equation (1.10) is globally-in-time well-posed in the metric space  $(X^s, d^s)$ ,  $s > \frac{3}{4}$  in the following sense (as in Theorem 1.2): For any initial data  $\psi_0 \in X^s$ , there exists a unique solution  $\psi \in \mathcal{C}(\mathbb{R}; X^s)$  (by which we mean that the flow map on  $1 + \mathcal{S}$  extends continuously to  $X^s$ ) and the flow map  $X^s \ni \psi_0 \mapsto \psi \in \mathcal{C}(\mathbb{R}; X^s)$  is continuous. The energy functionals  $(\mathcal{E}_\tau^s(\cdot))_{s > \frac{1}{2}, \tau \geq 2}$  established in Theorem 1.3 are also conserved by the modified KdV flow (1.10).*

*For real data the flow map extends to a continuous map from  $X^s$  to  $\mathcal{C}(\mathbb{R}; X^s)$  for  $s \geq 0$ .*

The following sections are organised as follows:

- In Section 2 we state and prove Theorem 2.1 (*resp.* Theorem 2.2), which states the local-in-time well-posedness of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) (*resp.* the modified KdV equation (1.10)) in the energy space  $(X^s, d^s)$ ,  $s \geq 0$  (*resp.*  $s > \frac{3}{4}$  in the complex case and  $s \geq 0$  in the real case): For any initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ , there exists a unique solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}([-t_0, t_0]; X^s)$  of (1.1) (*resp.* (1.10)), such that the flow map is continuous and the existence time  $t_0$  depends only on  $E^s(q_0)$ .
- In Section 3 we state Theorem 3.1, where we introduce the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  and show the conservation of  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; q(t))$  by the Gross-Pitaevskii flow on the existence time interval  $I$  for any solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}(I; X^s)$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ .
- Section 4 is devoted to the proof of Theorem 3.1.
- In Section 5 we state and prove Theorem 5.1, where we establish a family of energy functionals  $(\mathcal{E}_\tau^s : X^s \mapsto [0, \infty))_{s > \frac{1}{2}, \tau \geq 2}$  in terms of  $\ln T_c^{-1}$ , which satisfies the equivalence relation (1.19).
- Section 6 is devoted to the proof of Theorem 1.1.
- In the Appendix we calculate the quadratic term in the expansion of  $\ln T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  on the imaginary axis.

At the end of this introduction, we prove our main Theorems 1.2 and 1.3 concerning the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) by use of the results from Theorems 2.1, 3.1 and 5.1. Since the modified KdV equation (1.10) shares the same Lax operator as the Gross-Pitaevskii equation, Theorem 1.4 follows from Theorems 2.2, 3.1 and 5.1 exactly in the same way.

We first state the relations between  $E_\tau^s = \|\mathbf{q}\|_{H_\tau^{s-1}}$ ,  $E^s = E_2^s$  and  $\frac{1}{\tau}\|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2}$ .

**Lemma 1.1.** *There exists a family of constants  $(C_s)_{s > \frac{1}{2}}$  with  $C_s \geq 1$  and  $C_s = C_1$ ,  $s \geq 1$  such that whenever  $\tau \geq 2$ , for all  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ ,*

$$(1.21) \quad \begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\tau}\|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} &\leq C_s \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}-s} E_\tau^s, \quad E_\tau^s \leq C_s \tau^{\max\{0, s-1\}} E^s, \\ \text{and hence } \frac{1}{\tau}\|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} &\leq C_s \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}-\min\{s, 1\}} E^s. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* We derive from the scaling property (1.18) and the embedding  $H^{s-1}(\mathbb{R}) \hookrightarrow l_1^2 DU^2(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\tau}\|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} &= \frac{1}{\tau} \left( \|( |q|^2 - 1 )_\tau \|_{l_1^2 DU^2}^2 + \|(\partial_x q)_\tau\|_{l_1^2 DU^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \text{with } f_\tau = \frac{1}{\tau} f\left(\frac{\cdot}{\tau}\right) \\ &\leq C_s \frac{1}{\tau} \left( \|( |q|^2 - 1 )_\tau \|_{H^{s-1}}^2 + \|(\partial_x q)_\tau\|_{H^{s-1}}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = C_s \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}-s} E_\tau^s(q). \end{aligned}$$



By virtue of the fact that  $\tau \mapsto E_\tau^s$  is decreasing if  $s \in (\frac{1}{2}, 1]$  and  $E_\tau^s \leq (\tau/2)^{s-1} E^s$  if  $s \geq 1$ , we have  $E_\tau^s \leq C_s \tau^{\max\{0, s-1\}} E^s$ .  $\square$

We are going to prove the global-in-time wellposedness result (Theorem 1.2) and the energy conservation law (1.20) (Theorem 1.3) simultaneously, for the initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  by use of the following facts from Theorems 2.1, 3.1 and 5.1:

- There exists a unique solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}([-t_0, t_0]; X^s)$  of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation with  $t_0 > 0$  depending only on  $E^s(q_0)$  (by Theorem 2.1);
- The renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; q(t))$  is conserved by the Gross-Pitaevskii flow on  $[-t_0, t_0]$  (by Theorem 3.1);
- The energy functional  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s$ , which is constructed in terms of  $\ln T_c^{-1}$ , is also conserved by the Gross-Pitaevskii flow, and furthermore, the equivalence relation (1.19) holds (by Theorem 5.1).

For the initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ , we take  $\tau_0$  depending only on  $E^s(q_0)$  such that (with the constant  $C$  given in (1.19))

$$(1.22) \quad C_s^2 \tau_0^{-\frac{1}{2} - \min\{s, 1\}} (2E^s(q_0)) < \frac{1}{2C} \text{ and hence by Lemma 1.1, } \frac{1}{\tau_0} \|\mathbf{q}_0\|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 D U^2} < \frac{1}{2C}.$$

The equivalence relation (1.19) implies initially  $E_{\tau_0}^s(q_0) \leq \sqrt{2\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s(q_0)} \leq 2E_{\tau_0}^s(q_0)$ .

By the equivalence relation (1.19) and the conservation of the energy  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s(q(t))$ , the solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}([-t_0, t_0]; X^s)$  satisfies the conservation law (1.20) on the existence time interval  $t \in [-t_0, t_0]$  as follows (noticing also (1.21), (1.22)):

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\tau_0}^s(q(t)) &\leq \sqrt{2\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s(q(t))} = \sqrt{2\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s(q_0)} \leq 2E_{\tau_0}^s(q_0), \\ \frac{1}{\tau_0} \|\mathbf{q}(t)\|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 D U^2} &\leq C_s \tau_0^{-\frac{1}{2} - s} E_{\tau_0}^s(q(t)) \leq C_s \tau_0^{-\frac{1}{2} - s} (2E_{\tau_0}^s(q_0)) \\ &\leq C_s^2 \tau_0^{-\frac{1}{2} - \min\{s, 1\}} (2E^s(q_0)) < \frac{1}{2C}. \end{aligned}$$

By a continuity argument, the solution  $q$  exists globally in time and satisfies the energy conservation law (1.20):  $E_{\tau_0}^s(q(t)) \leq 2E_{\tau_0}^s(q_0)$ ,  $\forall t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Indeed, if not and suppose  $I \neq \mathbb{R}$  is the maximal existence time interval for the solution  $q$ , then by the above argument we have  $E_{\tau_0}^s(q(t)) \leq 2E_{\tau_0}^s(q_0)$  for all  $t \in I$ . By Theorem 2.1 we can extend the solution to a strictly larger time interval than  $I$ , which is a contradiction of the maximality of  $I$ .

## 2. LOCAL WELL-POSEDNESS

We prove the locally-in-time well-posedness for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (see Theorem 2.1) and for the modified Korteweg-de Vries equation (see Theorem 2.2) respectively in this section.

**Theorem 2.1.** *The Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) is locally-in-time well-posed in the metric space  $(X^s, d^s)$ ,  $s \geq 0$  in the following sense (as in Theorem 1.2):*

- For any initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ , there exists  $t_0 > 0$  depending only on  $E^s(q_0) = \|\mathbf{q}_0\|_{H_2^{s-1}}$ ,  $\mathbf{q}_0 = (|q_0|^2 - 1, q_0)$ , and a unique solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}((-t_0, t_0); X^s)$  (defined in Definition 1.1) of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation;
- For the neighbourhood  $B_r^s(q_0) = \{p_0 \in X^s \mid d^s(q_0, p_0) < r\}$ ,  $r > 0$ , of the initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ , there exists  $t_1 > 0$  depending only on  $E^s(q_0)$ ,  $r$  such that the flow map  $B_r^s(q_0) \ni p_0 \mapsto p \in \mathcal{C}((-t_1, t_1); X^s)$  is continuous.

We begin with a lemma. Let  $\varepsilon \in (0, 1]$ , with  $\varepsilon = 1$  being a legitimate and most natural choice in what follows. We regularize a function  $f$  by taking its convolution with the mollifier  $\rho_\varepsilon = \varepsilon^{-1}\rho(\varepsilon^{-1}x)$ ,  $0 \leq \rho \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \rho = 1$  as  $f_\varepsilon := f * \rho_\varepsilon$ .

**Lemma 2.1.** *Let  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s \geq 0$  and let  $\tilde{q}$  be a representative. Then*

- (1)  $\tilde{q}_\varepsilon \in X^\sigma$  for all  $\sigma \geq 0$  and  $\tilde{q}_\varepsilon \rightarrow \tilde{q}$  in  $X^s$  as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ . The map  $X^s \ni \tilde{q} \rightarrow \tilde{q}_\varepsilon \in X^\sigma$  is Lipschitz continuous.
- (2) Let  $q \in X^s$ , and  $\phi$  a Schwartz function such that for one (and hence for all) representative  $\tilde{q}$  there holds  $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{q}\phi dx \neq 0$ . Then there is a neighborhood of  $q$  such that this remains true. We fix the representatives with  $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{q}\phi dx \in (0, \infty)$ , then the map

$$X^s \ni q \rightarrow \tilde{q} - \tilde{q}_\varepsilon \in H^s$$

is continuous.

- (3) The map

$$H^s \ni b \rightarrow \tilde{q} + b \in X^s$$

is Lipschitz continuous.

*Proof.* We derive from

$$\begin{aligned} (f - f_\varepsilon)(x) &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} (f(x) - f(x-y))\rho_\varepsilon(y) dy \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \int_0^y f'(x-a) da \rho_\varepsilon(y) dy = \int_{\mathbb{R}} f'(x-a) \int_{A(a)} \rho_\varepsilon(y) dy da \end{aligned}$$

where

$$A(a) = \begin{cases} (a, \infty) & \text{if } a > 0 \\ (-\infty, a) & \text{if } a < 0 \end{cases}$$

that

$$(2.1) \quad \|f - f_\varepsilon\|_{L^2} \lesssim \|f'\|_{H^{-1}}$$

with an absolute implicit constant.

We choose  $\eta \in C_0^\infty$ . Then

$$\int \eta |f_\varepsilon|^2 dx = \int \eta (|f|^2 - 1) dx + \int \eta dx - \int \eta |f - f_\varepsilon|^2 dx - 2\operatorname{Re} \int \eta \bar{f}_\varepsilon (f - f_\varepsilon) dx,$$

and hence

$$\int \eta |f_\varepsilon|^2 dx \leq 2\| |f|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}} \|\eta\|_{H^1} + 2\|\eta\|_{L^1} + 3\|f - f_\varepsilon\|_{L^2}^2 \|\eta\|_{\sup}.$$

Choosing  $\eta$  appropriately we see that there exists  $C > 0$  so that for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$

$$(2.2) \quad \|f_\varepsilon\|_{L^2([x, x+1])} \leq C(1 + \| |f|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}}^{\frac{1}{2}} + \|f'\|_{H^{-1}}).$$

We may choose  $\tilde{\rho} = \rho * \rho$  and obtain with a small abuse of notation

$$(2.3) \quad \|f_\varepsilon\|_{L^\infty} \leq c\varepsilon^{-1/2} C(1 + \| |f|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}}^{\frac{1}{2}} + \|f'\|_{H^{-1}}).$$

Using the embedding  $L^1 \hookrightarrow H^{-1}$  we estimate using a partition of unity

$$\begin{aligned} \| |f_\varepsilon|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}} &\leq \| |f|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}} + c \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \| |f_\varepsilon|^2 - |f|^2 \|_{L^1((k-1, k+1))} \\ &\leq \| |f|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}} + c \sup_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} (\|f_\varepsilon\|_{L^2((k-1, k+1))} + \|f\|_{L^2((k-1, k+1))}) \|f_\varepsilon - f\|_{L^2} \\ &\leq c \left( \| |f|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}} + (1 + \|f'\|_{H^{-1}}) \|f'\|_{H^{-1}} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Notice that for any  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$(2.4) \quad \|f'_\varepsilon\|_{H^\sigma} \leq C(\varepsilon, \sigma) \|f'\|_{H^{-1}},$$

and hence

$$(2.5) \quad \begin{aligned} \| |f_\varepsilon|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{\sigma+1}} + \|f'_\varepsilon\|_{H^{\sigma-1}} &\lesssim \| |f_\varepsilon|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}} + \|\bar{f}_\varepsilon f'_\varepsilon\|_{H^\sigma} + \|f'\|_{H^{-1}} \\ &\leq C(\varepsilon, \sigma, E^0(f)) E^0(f). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore  $\tilde{q}_\varepsilon \in X^\sigma$  for all  $\sigma \geq 0$  and the convergence  $\tilde{q}_\varepsilon \rightarrow \tilde{q}$  in  $X^s$ , i.e.  $d^s(\tilde{q}_\varepsilon, \tilde{q}) \rightarrow 0$ , as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  follows immediately from these considerations. Indeed,

$$\begin{aligned} (d^s(\tilde{q}_\varepsilon, \tilde{q}))^2 &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \|\operatorname{sech}(x-y)(\tilde{q} - \lambda \tilde{q}_\varepsilon)\|_{H^s}^2 dy \leq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \|\operatorname{sech}(x-y)(\tilde{q} - \tilde{q}_\varepsilon)\|_{H^s}^2 dy \\ &\leq c_1 \int_{\mathbb{R}} \|\operatorname{sech}(x-y)\tilde{q}'\|_{H^{s-1}}^2 dy \\ &\leq c_2 \|\tilde{q}'\|_{H^{s-1}}^2 < \infty. \end{aligned}$$

Given  $\delta > 0$  we can restrict the above  $y$  integration to a compact interval with an error at most  $\delta$ . The convergence on the compact  $y$  interval is immediate.

We turn to the proof of Lipschitz continuity of the map

$$*\rho_\varepsilon : X^s \ni \tilde{q} \mapsto \tilde{q}_\varepsilon \in X^\sigma.$$

Indeed, recalling the metric distance function  $d^s$  in (1.5), we first calculate  $d^s(\tilde{q}_\varepsilon, \tilde{p}_\varepsilon)$ . We have the following commutator formulae:

$$[\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y), *\rho_\varepsilon](\lambda\tilde{q} - \tilde{p}) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \int_0^m \operatorname{sech}'(\cdot - y - a)(\lambda\tilde{q} - \tilde{p})(\cdot - m) da \rho_\varepsilon(m) dm,$$

where  $[\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y), *\rho_\varepsilon]f = \operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)(f * \rho_\varepsilon) - (\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)f) * \rho_\varepsilon$ . Hence we derive the Lipschitz continuity of the map  $*\rho_\varepsilon : X^s \mapsto X^s$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (d^s(\tilde{q} * \rho_\varepsilon, \tilde{p} * \rho_\varepsilon))^2 &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \|\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)((\lambda\tilde{q} - \tilde{p}) * \rho_\varepsilon)\|_{H^s}^2 dy \\ &\lesssim \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \left( \|\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)(\lambda\tilde{q} - \tilde{p})\|_{H^s}^2 + \|\operatorname{sech}'(\cdot - y)(\lambda\tilde{q} - \tilde{p})\|_{H^s}^2 \right) dy \leq C(d^s(\tilde{q}, \tilde{p}))^2. \end{aligned}$$

We turn to the proof that

$$X^s \ni q \rightarrow \tilde{q} - \tilde{q}_\varepsilon \in H^s$$

is continuous. First, it is not hard to see that, if  $\phi$  is a Schwartz function and

$$\int \tilde{q}\phi dx \neq 0,$$

then there is a neighborhood so that this remains true. Now let  $\varepsilon_0 > 0$ . There exists a smaller neighborhood and a compact interval  $I$  so that

$$\|\tilde{q} - \tilde{q}_\varepsilon\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R} \setminus I)} \lesssim \|\tilde{q}'\|_{H^{s-1}(\mathbb{R} \setminus I)} < \varepsilon_0/2$$

for all representative of functions in this smaller neighborhood. Clearly there exists  $\delta > 0$  so that

$$\|p - \tilde{q}\|_{H^s(I)} < \varepsilon_0/2, \quad \forall p \in B_\delta^s(\tilde{q}).$$

Now let  $\tilde{q}$  be a representative and consider

$$H^s \ni b \rightarrow \widetilde{q + b} \in X^s.$$

It suffices to prove that there exists  $C$  so that

$$d^s(q + b, q) \leq C \|b\|_{H^s},$$

which follows immediately from the definition of  $d^s$ .  $\square$

*Proof of Theorem 2.1*. If  $q$  solves the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) with the initial data  $q_0 \in X^0$  and  $\tilde{q}, \tilde{q}_0$  are the corresponding representatives of  $q(t), q_0$ , then  $b = \tilde{q} - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}$  satisfies the following nonlinear Schrödinger-type equation

$$(2.6) \quad i\partial_t b + \partial_{xx} b = g(b), \quad b|_{t=0} = b_0 = \tilde{q}_0 - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon} \in H^s,$$

where

$$g(b) = 2|b|^2 b + 4\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|b|^2 + 2\overline{\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}}b^2 + (4|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 2)b + 2(\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon})^2 \bar{b} + 2\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}(|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 1) - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}''.$$

Vice versa: If  $b$  satisfies this equation then  $\tilde{q}$  satisfies (1.1).

We claim that there exist a positive time  $t^0$  and a positive constant  $C^0$  depending only on  $E^0(q_0), \varepsilon$  and a unique solution of (2.6):  $b \in \mathcal{C}([-t^0, t^0]; L^2)$  such that

$$\|b\|_{t^0} := \|b(t)\|_{L^\infty([-t^0, t^0]; L_x^2)} + \|b\|_{L^8([-t^0, t^0]; L^4(\mathbb{R}_x))} + \|b\|_{L^6([-t^0, t^0] \times \mathbb{R})} \leq C^0 E^0(q_0).$$

Indeed, recall the Strichartz estimates for the Schrödinger semigroup  $S(t) = e^{it\partial_{xx}}$ :

$$\|S(t)b_0\|_T \lesssim \|b_0\|_{L^2}, \quad \left\| \int_0^t S(t-t')g(t')dt' \right\|_T \lesssim \|g\|_{L^1([-T, T]; L_x^2)}.$$

Since we derive from the estimates (2.5) that

$$\begin{aligned} \|g(b)\|_{L^1([-T, T]; L_x^2)} &\lesssim T^{\frac{1}{2}} \|b\|_T^3 + T^{\frac{3}{4}} \|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}\|_{L_x^\infty} \|b\|_T^2 \\ &\quad + T(\|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}\|_{L_x^\infty}^2 + 1)(\|b\|_T + \||\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 1\|_{L_x^2} + \|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}''\|_{L_x^2}) \\ &\leq C(\varepsilon, E^0(q_0)) \left( T^{\frac{1}{2}} \|b\|_T^3 + T^{\frac{3}{4}} \|b\|_T^2 + T(\|b\|_T + 1) \right), \end{aligned}$$

there exist a small enough positive time  $t^0$  and a positive constant  $C^0$  (depending only on  $\varepsilon, E^0(q_0)$ ) such that the map

$$b \mapsto S(t)b_0 + \int_0^t S(t-t')g(b(t'))dt',$$

is a contraction map in the complete metric space  $\{b \in \mathcal{C}([-t^0, t^0]; L^2) \mid \|b\|_{t^0} \leq C^0 E^s(q_0)\}$ , and hence its fixed point is the unique solution of (2.6). It is easy to see that the flow map  $b_0 \mapsto b(t)$  is locally Lipschitz in  $L^2$ . Correspondingly there exists a solution (in Definition 1.1) with  $\tilde{q} = \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon} + b \in \mathcal{C}((-t^0, t^0); X^s + L^2) = \mathcal{C}((-t^0, t^0); X^0)$  of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) with the initial data  $q_0 \in X^0$ , such that  $\|\tilde{q}(t) - \tilde{q}_0\|_{L^2} \leq \|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon} - \tilde{q}_0\|_{L^2} + \|b(t)\|_{L^2} \leq (C + C^0)E^0(q_0)$ ,  $\forall t \in [-t^0, t^0]$  and  $\tilde{q}(t) - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon} = b(t) \in L^4([-t^0, t^0] \times \mathbb{R})$ .

Consider two solutions (in Definition 1.1)  $q_1, q_2 \in \mathcal{C}((-t^0, t^0); X^0)$  of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) with the initial data  $q_0 \in X^0$ . We may choose for both solutions the same representative  $\tilde{q}_0$ . Then on any compact time interval  $I \ni 0$  in  $(-t^0, t^0)$  their difference  $b_{12} = \tilde{q}_1 - \tilde{q}_2 \in L^\infty(I; L^2) \cap L^4(I \times \mathbb{R})$  with zero initial data satisfies in the distribution sense the following equation similar as (2.6):

$$i\partial_t b_{12} + \partial_{xx} b_{12} = 2|b_{12}|^2 b_{12} + 4\tilde{q}_2|b_{12}|^2 + 2\overline{\tilde{q}_2}(b_{12})^2 + (4|\tilde{q}_2|^2 - 2)b_{12} + 2(\tilde{q}_2)^2 \bar{b}_{12},$$

which has a unique solution 0 in  $L^\infty([a, b]; L^2)$ , by virtue of the energy inequality<sup>4</sup>. Hence  $\tilde{q}_1 = \tilde{q}_2 = \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon} + b$  with  $b$  satisfying (2.6).

If  $s \in (0, 1)$ , we decompose  $g = g(b)$  into

$$g = g_2(b) + g_1(b) + g_0, \quad g_1(b) = (4|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 2)b + 2(\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon})^2 \bar{b}, \quad g_0 = 2\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}(|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 1) - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}''.$$

Recall the definition of the Besov-norm for  $s \in (0, 1)$ :

$$\|f\|_{\dot{B}_{\alpha,r}^s} = \left\| \frac{\|f(x-y) - f(x)\|_{L_x^\alpha}}{|y|^s} \right\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}; \frac{dy}{|y|})}, \quad \|f\|_{B_{\alpha,r}^s} = \|f\|_{L^\alpha} + \|f\|_{\dot{B}_{\alpha,r}^s},$$

and in particular  $\dot{B}_{2,2}^s = \dot{H}^s$ . We apply the previous construction to the finite differences, and integrate the estimates for fixed  $y$  according to the Besov norm above. It follows from these construction that the time of existence is the same for all  $s \in [0, 1)$ .

The case  $s \geq 1$  follows similarly.

Therefore the Gross-Pitaevskii flow map  $X^s \ni \tilde{q}_0 \mapsto \tilde{q}_0 * \rho_\varepsilon + b \in X^s$  is continuous on the existence time interval  $[-t^0, t^0]$ . Indeed, by the Lipschitz continuity of the flow (2.6), for any two solutions  $\tilde{q}_1(t) = \tilde{q}_{1,\varepsilon} + b_1(t)$  and  $\tilde{q}_2(t) = \tilde{q}_{2,\varepsilon} + b_2(t)$ ,

$$d^s(\tilde{q}_1(t), \tilde{q}_2(t)) \leq d^s(\tilde{q}_{1,\varepsilon}, \tilde{q}_{2,\varepsilon}) + C\|b_1(0) - b_2(0)\|_{H^s},$$

and the continuity of the GP flow follows from Lemma 2.1.  $\square$

We complete this section by a discussion of the flow defined by modified Korteweg-de Vries equation (1.10):  $q_t + q_{xxx} - 6|q|^2 q_x = 0$ .

**Theorem 2.2.** *The complex modified KdV equation (1.10) is locally-in-time well-posed in the metric space  $(X^s, d^s)$ ,  $s > \frac{3}{4}$  in the following sense (as in Theorem 1.2):*

- For any initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ , there exists  $t_0 > 0$  depending only on  $E^s(q_0) = \|q_0\|_{H_x^{s-1}}$ ,  $q_0' = (|q_0|^2 - 1, q_0')$ , and a unique solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}((-t_0, t_0); X^s)$ , by which we mean that the flow map on  $1 + \mathcal{S}$  extends continuously to  $X^s$ .
- For the neighbourhood  $B_r^s(q_0) = \{p_0 \in X^s \mid d^s(q_0, p_0) < r\}$ ,  $r > 0$ , of the initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$ , there exists  $t_1 > 0$  depending only on  $E^s(q_0)$ ,  $r$  such that the flow map  $B_r^s(q_0) \ni p_0 \mapsto p \in \mathcal{C}((-t_1, t_1); X^s)$  is continuous.

For real data the flow map extends to a continuous map from  $X_{\mathbb{R}}^s$  to  $\mathcal{C}((-t_1, t_1); X^s)$  for  $s \geq 0$ . Here  $X_{\mathbb{R}}^s$  denotes the subspace of real valued functions.

*Proof.* We proceed in the same fashion as for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation. Now  $b = \tilde{q} - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}$  satisfies

$$(2.7) \quad b_t + b_{xxx} = g(b)$$

where

$$g(b) = 6|b|^2 b_x + 12\operatorname{Re}(b\overline{\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}})b_x + 6b_x + 6(|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 1)b_x + 6|b|^2 \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}' \\ + 12\operatorname{Re}(b\overline{\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon x}})\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon} + 6|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 \partial_x \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon} - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}^{(3)}.$$

<sup>4</sup>We can follow the standard regularizing procedure to derive the energy inequality: We regularize the  $b_{12}$ -equation by convolution with  $\rho_\delta$ , take the  $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ -inner product between the regularized equation and  $b_{12,\delta} = b_{12} * \rho_\delta$ , take the imaginary part and finally we use Gronwall's inequality and let  $\delta \rightarrow 0$ .

Changing coordinates  $(t, x) \rightarrow (t, y)$  with  $y = x + 6t$  we remove the term  $6b_x$ . Notice that

$$6|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 \partial_x \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon} - \tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}^{(3)} \in L^2$$

and  $\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}$  is together with all its derivatives uniformly bounded. The most critical terms are  $6|b|^2 b_x$ ,  $12\operatorname{Re}(b\overline{\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}})b_x$  and  $6(|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 1)b_x$ .

We claim that (2.7) is locally wellposed in  $H^s$ ,  $s > \frac{3}{4}$ , and that the solution is continuous with values in  $H^s$ . Indeed, this follows from a contraction argument as for the Korteweg-de Vries equation

$$(2.8) \quad u_t + u_{xxx} - 6uu_x = 0$$

by Kenig, Ponce and Vega [25, 26]. More precisely their arguments allow to deal with  $|b|^2 b_x$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(b\overline{\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}})b_x$ . Since  $|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 1 \in H^N$  for all  $N$  the term

$$(|\tilde{q}_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 1)b_x$$

is covered by the same estimates as the previous terms.

For real initial data we use a different argument. Let  $s \geq 0$ . Then again  $|q_{0,\varepsilon}|^2 - 1 \in H^N$  for all  $N$ . Since it is also real we must have one of the following alternatives for fixed  $N$ :

- (1)  $q_{0,\varepsilon} - 1 \in H^N$
- (2)  $q_{0,\varepsilon} - \tanh(x) \in H^N$
- (3)  $q_{0,\varepsilon} + 1 \in H^N$
- (4)  $q_{0,\varepsilon} + \tanh(x) \in H^N$ .

Replacing  $q$  by  $-q$  if necessary it remains to consider two situations:

- (i)  $q + 1 \in H^s$
- (ii)  $q + \tanh(x) \in H^s$ .

It is easy to see that  $q \in X^s$  if one these situations holds. We recall the definition of the Miura map

$$M(q) = q_x + q^2.$$

Then the following lemma holds.

**Lemma 2.2.** *A) The map*

$$H^s \ni w \rightarrow (M(w - 1) - 1) \in H^{s-1}$$

*is a diffeomorphism of  $H^s$  to its range*

$$\{u \in H^{s-1} : -\partial_{xx} + u \text{ has no eigenvalue } \leq -1\}.$$

*B) The map*

$$H^s \times (0, \infty) \ni (w, \lambda) \rightarrow (M(w - \lambda \tanh(\lambda x)) - \lambda^2) \in H^{s-1}$$

*is a diffeomorphism to its range*

$$\{u \in H^{s-1} : -\partial_{xx} + u \text{ has a negative eigenvalue}\}.$$

*Moreover  $-\lambda^2$  is the lowest eigenvalue.*

*C) In both cases A) and B), let  $q = w - 1$  resp.  $q = w - \tanh(x)$ , then  $q : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \mapsto \mathbb{R}$  satisfies the real modified KdV (1.10) iff*

$$u = M(q) - 1 = q_x + q^2 - 1$$

*satisfies the KdV equation (2.8):*

$$(2.9) \quad u_t - 6u_x + u_{xxx} - 6uu_x = 0.$$

Since the KdV equation (2.8) is wellposed in  $H^{-1}$  [27] (in the sense that the flow map extends continuously), if  $w = q + 1 \in H^s$  then it follows from A) and C) that  $u = M(q) - 1 \in H^{s-1} \subset H^{-1}$  and (1.10) is well-posed in  $H^s$ ,  $s \geq 0$ . Similarly Theorem 2.2 follows in the case (ii):  $w = q + \tanh(x) \in H^s$ .

It remains to prove Lemma 2.2. Part B) of the Lemma has been proven by Buckmaster and the first author [8]. If  $q$  satisfies (1.10) then  $u = q_x + q^2$  satisfies (2.8). Now suppose that  $u$  satisfies KdV (2.9) (the term  $6u_x$  is inessential, and can be removed by a Galilean transform). Since the preimage is unique it has to be a solution to mKdV, at least if the initial data is sufficiently smooth. This can be achieved by an approximation argument.

It remains to prove A). It is easy to see (compare [8]) that  $w \in H^s$  implies  $M(w - 1) - 1 \in H^{s-1}$  for  $s \geq 0$ . Moreover this map is clearly analytic. The derivative at  $w_0$  is

$$\dot{w} \rightarrow \dot{w}_x + 2(w_0 - 1)\dot{w}$$

which has the (right) inverse

$$(Tf)(x) = - \int_x^\infty e^{2 \int_x^y w_0 d\tau - 2(y-x)} f(y) dy.$$

It is easy to see that  $T$  maps  $H^{s-1}$  to  $H^s$  for all  $s \geq 0$  and  $w_0 \in H^s$ . Moreover the linearization is injective. Indeed, suppose that  $\dot{w} \in L^2$  satisfies

$$\dot{w}_x + 2(w_0 - 1)\dot{w} = 0.$$

Then  $\dot{w}$  is absolutely continuous and decays to 0 as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ . The variation of constants formula and a limit argument show that  $\dot{w}$  vanishes.

To verify injectivity of the nonlinear map we assume that  $w_0$  and  $w_1$  are mapped to the same function. Then, with  $\dot{w} = w_1 - w_0$

$$\dot{w}_x + (w_0 + w_1)\dot{w} - 2\dot{w} = 0$$

and hence  $\dot{w} = 0$  by the same argument as for the injectivity of the linearization.

The argument for surjectivity is based on Kappeler *et al* [30]. Let  $u \in H^{-1}$  be a function so that the spectrum of  $-\partial^2 + u$  is contained in  $(-1, \infty)$ . According to [30] there exists a bounded positive function  $\phi$  which satisfies

$$(2.10) \quad -\phi'' + u\phi + \phi = 0.$$

Let  $v = \frac{d}{dx} \ln \phi$ . A straightforward calculation shows that

$$v' + v^2 = u + 1, \text{ i.e. } M(v) - 1 = u.$$

Let  $\tilde{v} = v * \rho$  where  $\rho \in C_0^\infty$  is supported in  $[-1, 1]$  with integral 1. It suffices to find  $\tilde{v}$  so that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \tilde{v}(x) = -1, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \tilde{v}(x) = -1.$$

Now we use [8] to see that  $\tilde{v}$  has a limit in  $\{\pm 1\}$  as  $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$ , possibly different on both sides. If

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \tilde{v}(x) = 1, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \tilde{v}(x) = -1,$$

then  $\phi \in L^2$  and it were an eigenfunction of the eigenvalue  $-1$ , which contradicts our assumption. Thus, if

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \tilde{v}(x) = -1,$$

then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \tilde{v}(x) = -1$  and we found the preimage in case A). Hence suppose that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \tilde{v}(x) = 1.$$

Then

$$\phi_1 = \phi(x) \int_x^\infty \phi(y)^{-2} dy$$

is a nonnegative solution of (2.10) and is bounded for positive  $x$ . Hence  $v_1 = \frac{d}{dx} \ln \phi_1$  satisfies (with  $\tilde{v}_1 = v_1 * \rho$  as above)

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \tilde{v}_1(x) = -1$$

and, by the previous considerations of our assumption,

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \tilde{v}_1(x) = -1.$$

With this we have found the preimage  $v_1$  in case A).  $\square$

### 3. THE TRANSMISSION COEFFICIENT

We introduce the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  and state its properties in Theorem 3.1 in this section.

We will first recall the definition of the transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}$  associated to the Lax operator (1.9), i.e. the Lax equation:

$$(3.1) \quad u_x = \begin{pmatrix} -i\lambda & q \\ \bar{q} & i\lambda \end{pmatrix} u,$$

on the Riemann surface  $\mathcal{R}$  (see Subsection 3.1 below for the definition), in the classical functional setting where  $q - 1$  is Schwartz function in Subsection 3.2.

With the notations introduced in Subsection 3.3, we will give an *asymptotic expansion* of the transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}$  in Subsection 3.4, which will play a key role in the analysis of  $T^{-1}$ .

Finally in Subsection 3.5 we discuss the renormalisation of the transmission coefficient and give Theorem 3.1 stating the well-definedness and the asymptotic expansion of the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}$  in our finite energy setting  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ , whose proof will be postponed in Section 4.

**3.1. A Riemann surface.** We define a Riemann surface by

$$\{(\lambda, z) \in \mathbb{C}^2 \mid \lambda^2 = 1 + z^2\}.$$

If infinity is added, its genus is 0 and it is indeed the Riemann sphere with respect to the complex variable  $\zeta := \lambda + z$ .

We typically choose the upper sheet  $\mathcal{R}$  of this Riemann surface:

$$(3.2) \quad \mathcal{R} = \{(\lambda, z) \mid \lambda \in \mathcal{V}, \quad z = z(\lambda) = \sqrt{\lambda^2 - 1} \in \mathcal{U}\},$$

where  $\mathcal{V} := \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}}$ ,  $\mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}} := (-\infty, -1] \cup [1, +\infty)$ ,  $\mathcal{U} := \{z \in \mathbb{C} \mid \text{Im } z > 0\}$ ,

and we can take simply  $\lambda \in \mathcal{V}$  as the coordinate on  $\mathcal{R}$ . We notice the following symmetry of  $\mathcal{R}$

$$(3.3) \quad (\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R} \Leftrightarrow (\bar{\lambda}, -\bar{z}) \in \mathcal{R}.$$



In particular, the points  $(\pm\sqrt{1-\tau^2/4}, i\tau/2)$ ,  $\tau \in (0, 2]$  and the purely imaginary points  $(\pm i\sigma, i\tau/2)$ ,  $\tau \in [2, \infty)$  stay on  $\mathcal{R}$ :

$$(3.4) \quad (\pm i\sigma, i\tau/2) \in \mathcal{R} \text{ whenever } \tau \geq 2 \text{ and } \sigma = \sqrt{\tau^2/4 - 1} \in \mathbb{R}.$$

We can define a conformal mapping from  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$  to  $\zeta \in \mathcal{U}$  the upper half-plane by  $\zeta = \zeta(\lambda) = \lambda + z$ . The mapping takes the cuts  $\lambda \in \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}}$  to the real axis  $\zeta \in \mathbb{R}$  and the neighbourhood of  $\infty$  for  $\text{Im } \lambda < 0$  to a neighbourhood of  $\zeta = 0$ . The inverse mapping is given by the so-called Zulkowsky mapping  $\zeta \mapsto \lambda = \lambda(\zeta) = \frac{1}{2}(\zeta + \frac{1}{\zeta})$  and hence  $1 = (\lambda - z)\zeta$ ,  $z = z(\zeta) = \frac{1}{2}(\zeta - \frac{1}{\zeta})$ ,  $\frac{1}{\zeta} = \bar{\lambda} - \bar{z} \in \mathcal{U}$ .

**3.2. Jost solutions and the transmission coefficient.** In this subsection we assume the classical functional setting (as in [14, 37])

$$(3.5) \quad q = 1 + q^0, \quad q^0 \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}) \text{ Schwartz function,}$$

and we are going to introduce the Jost solution of the Lax equation (3.1) as well as the associated transmission coefficient.

**3.2.1. Real line case**  $(\lambda, z) = (\hat{\xi}, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . Let  $0 \neq z = \xi \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\lambda = \hat{\xi} \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $\hat{\xi} = (1 + \xi^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} > 1$ . Then under the assumption (3.5) on the potential  $q$ ,  $\pm i\xi$  are the two eigenvalues of the matrix in (3.1) at infinity:  $\begin{pmatrix} -i\hat{\xi} & 1 \\ 1 & i\hat{\xi} \end{pmatrix}$ .

Let the Jost solution  $u_l$  solve the Lax equation (3.1) (viewing  $\lambda = \hat{\xi}$  as parameter) satisfying the following boundary conditions at  $-\infty$

$$u_l(x) = e^{-i\xi x} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\hat{\xi} - \xi) \end{pmatrix} + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty.$$

Then there exist two complex numbers  $T^{-1}, R \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $u_l$  takes the following asymptotic at  $+\infty$ :

$$u_l(x) = e^{-i\xi x} T^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\hat{\xi} - \xi) \end{pmatrix} + e^{i\xi x} R T^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\hat{\xi} + \xi) \end{pmatrix} + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow +\infty.$$

These two complex numbers  $T^{-1}, R$  are called the transmission coefficient and the right reflection coefficient respectively <sup>5</sup>.

Observe that if  $u = (u^1, u^2)^T$  is the solution of (3.1), then the quantity  $|u^1|^2 - |u^2|^2$  is constant. We compare the asymptotic behaviours of the Jost solution  $u_l$  at  $\pm\infty$  respectively to acquire

$$(3.6) \quad |T|^2 = 1 - (\hat{\xi} + \xi)^2 |R|^2 \leq 1, \quad \text{if } (\lambda, z) = (\hat{\xi}, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^2.$$

---

<sup>5</sup>In this paper we call  $T^{-1}$  the transmission coefficient while its reciprocal  $T$  is the physical relevant transmission coefficient. We can define similarly the left reflection coefficient by considering the asymptotic at  $-\infty$  of the Jost solution with the boundary condition  $e^{i\xi x} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\hat{\xi} + \xi) \end{pmatrix} + o(1)$  as  $x \rightarrow +\infty$ .

3.2.2. *Upper Riemann sheet case*  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ . The Jost solution  $u_l(x; \lambda)$  defined above on the “real axis”  $(\lambda, z) = (\hat{\xi}, \xi) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  can be analytically continued to the upper Riemann sheet  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ , taking the following asymptotics

$$(3.7) \quad \begin{aligned} u_l(\lambda, x, t) &= e^{-izx} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\lambda - z) \end{pmatrix} + o(1)e^{(\operatorname{Im} z)x} \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty, \\ u_l(\lambda, x, t) &= e^{-izx} T^{-1}(\lambda) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\lambda - z) \end{pmatrix} + o(1)e^{(\operatorname{Im} z)x} \text{ as } x \rightarrow +\infty. \end{aligned}$$

Under the potential assumption (3.5),  $T^{-1}(\lambda)$  is a holomorphic function on  $\mathcal{R}$  and  $\lim_{|\lambda| \rightarrow \infty} T^{-1}(\lambda) = 1$ .

The possible zeros of  $T^{-1}(\lambda)$  for  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \setminus (\mathbb{R} \setminus (-1, 1))$  are located on the interval  $(-1, 1) \subset \mathbb{R}$ . Indeed, if  $T^{-1}(\lambda) = 0$ , then  $\lambda \in \mathcal{V} = \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}}$  by (3.6). Thus  $z = \sqrt{\lambda^2 - 1} \in \mathcal{U}$  has strictly positive imaginary part such that  $\lambda, u_l$  (with the asymptotics (3.7) and with  $T^{-1}(\lambda) = 0$ ) are the eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenfunctions of the self-adjoint Lax operator  $L$  given in (1.9), and thus  $\lambda \in (-1, 1) \subset \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $\lambda \in (-1, 1)$  be an eigenvalue, then  $\pm iz = \mp \sqrt{1 - \lambda^2}$  are negative and positive real numbers. By checking the characteristic exponents of the ODE (3.1):  $Lu = \lambda u$  near infinity, the geometric multiplicity of  $\lambda$  is 1. Since the Lax operator  $L$  is self-adjoint, the algebraic multiplicity is also 1, and all eigenvalues in  $(-1, 1)$  are simple. As a consequence, the root  $\lambda$  of  $T^{-1}$  has multiplicity 1.

We denote these at most countably many zeros on  $(-1, 1)$  by  $\{\lambda_m\}_m$  and

$$(3.8) \quad z_m = i\sqrt{1 - (\lambda_m)^2} \in i(0, 1], \quad m \in \mathbb{N}.$$

We have the following symmetry for  $T^{-1}$ :

$$(3.9) \quad \overline{T^{-1}(\lambda)} = T^{-1}(\bar{\lambda}), \quad (\lambda, z), (\bar{\lambda}, -\bar{z}) \in \mathcal{R}.$$

Indeed, the symmetry of the Lax equation (3.1) implies that  $\overline{u_l^T} := (\overline{u_l^2}, \overline{u_l^1})$  with the asymptotics

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{u_l^T} &= -i(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{z})e^{i\bar{z}x} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\bar{\lambda} + \bar{z}) \end{pmatrix} + o(1)e^{\operatorname{Im} z x} \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty, \\ \overline{u_l^T} &= -i(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{z})e^{i\bar{z}x} \overline{T^{-1}(\lambda)} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\bar{\lambda} + \bar{z}) \end{pmatrix} + o(1)e^{\operatorname{Im} z x} \text{ as } x \rightarrow +\infty, \end{aligned}$$

satisfies the Lax equation (3.1) with  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$  replaced by  $(\bar{\lambda}, -\bar{z}) \in \mathcal{R}$ , which itself possesses a Jost solution with the following asymptotics:

$$\begin{aligned} u_l(\bar{\lambda}) &= e^{i\bar{z}x} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\bar{\lambda} + \bar{z}) \end{pmatrix} + o(1)e^{\operatorname{Im} z x} \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty, \\ u_l(\bar{\lambda}) &= e^{i\bar{z}x} T^{-1}(\bar{\lambda}) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i(\bar{\lambda} + \bar{z}) \end{pmatrix} + o(1)e^{\operatorname{Im} z x} \text{ as } x \rightarrow +\infty. \end{aligned}$$

By uniqueness we deduce (3.9). Therefore

- For  $\hat{\xi} \in \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}}$ , the limits  $\lim_{\lambda \rightarrow \hat{\xi} + i0} |T^{-1}(\lambda)|$  and  $\lim_{\lambda \rightarrow \hat{\xi} - i0} |T^{-1}(\lambda)|$  are the same. Hence the subharmonic function  $\ln |T^{-1}(\lambda)|$  on  $\mathcal{V}$  is continuous on  $\mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}}$  and generally  $\ln |T^{-1}(\lambda)| = \ln |T^{-1}(\bar{\lambda})|$  for  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ ;
- For  $(\lambda_{\pm}, z) = (\pm i\sigma, i\tau/2) \in \mathcal{R}$  with  $\tau \geq 2$  and  $\sigma = \sqrt{\tau^2/4 - 1} \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$(3.10) \quad \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \operatorname{Re} \ln T^{-1}(\lambda_{\pm}) = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{Re} (\ln T^{-1}(\lambda_+) + \ln T^{-1}(\bar{\lambda}_+)) = \operatorname{Re} \ln T^{-1}(\lambda_+).$$

Let us take the time variable into account. We multiply  $u_l$  by  $e^{-iz(2\lambda)t}$  such that the time evolutionary equation in (1.8) ensures

$$\partial_t(T^{-1}) = 0, \quad \partial_t R = 4iz\lambda R.$$

That is, the transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}(\lambda)$  is conserved by the Gross-Pitaevskii flow and we will make use of it to define the conserved energies for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1).

Similarly,  $e^{-iz(4\lambda^2+2)t}u_l$  satisfies (1.8) with  $q = \psi$  and with the matrix in (1.8)<sub>2</sub> replaced by  $P_{\text{mKdV}}$  in (1.11). The same transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}(\lambda)$  as for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation is conserved by the modified KdV flow (1.10).

**3.3. Notations.** Let  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ . Let  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$  and  $\zeta = \lambda + z \in \mathcal{U}$  the upper half-plane be as in Subsection 3.1. Then

$$(3.11) \quad |q|^2 - \zeta^2 \neq 0, \text{ and } \frac{1}{||q|^2 - \zeta^2|} \leq \frac{1}{(\text{Im } \zeta)^2}, \quad \frac{|\zeta|}{||q|^2 - \zeta^2|} \leq \frac{1}{\text{Im } \zeta}.$$

Indeed, if  $|\text{Re } \zeta| \geq \text{Im } \zeta$ , then

$$\frac{1}{||q|^2 - \zeta^2|} \leq \frac{1}{|\text{Im } \zeta|^2} \leq \frac{1}{2(\text{Im } \zeta)^2} \text{ and } \frac{|\zeta|}{||q|^2 - \zeta^2|} \leq \frac{\sqrt{2}|\text{Re } \zeta|}{2|\text{Re } \zeta|\text{Im } \zeta} \leq \frac{1}{\text{Im } \zeta},$$

while if  $|\text{Re } \zeta| \leq \text{Im } \zeta$ , then

$$\frac{1}{||q|^2 - \zeta^2|} = \left( (|q|^2 + (\text{Im } \zeta)^2 - (\text{Re } \zeta)^2)^2 + (2\text{Re } \zeta \text{Im } \zeta)^2 \right)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \leq \frac{1}{|\zeta|^2}.$$

We introduce the following functions which will play an essential role in the analysis of the transmission coefficient:

$$(*) \quad \begin{aligned} q_1 &= \frac{i\zeta(|q|^2 - 1) - \bar{q}q'}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}, & q_2 &= \frac{i\zeta q' + (|q|^2 - 1)q}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}, & q_3 &= \frac{-i\zeta \bar{q}' + (|q|^2 - 1)\bar{q}}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}, \\ q_4 &= \frac{2i\zeta(|q|^2 - 1) + q\bar{q}' - \bar{q}q'}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}, & \varphi(x) &= 2izx + \int_0^x q_4(x_1) dx_1. \end{aligned}$$

As in [31], let the symbols  $\int, \int$  correspond to the ordered integrals with respect to the functions  $e^{-\varphi(x)}q_3(x)$  and  $e^{\varphi(y)}q_2(y)$  respectively in the following way

$$\begin{aligned} \wedge &:= \int_{x_1 < y_1} e^{\varphi(y_1) - \varphi(x_1)} q_3(x_1) q_2(y_1) dx_1 dy_1, \\ \wedge^j &:= \int_{x_1 < y_1 < \dots < x_j < y_j} \prod_{n=1}^j e^{\varphi(y_n) - \varphi(x_n)} q_3(x_n) q_2(y_n) dx dy, \\ \widehat{\wedge} &:= \int_{t_1 < t_2 < t_3 < t_4} e^{\varphi(t_4) + \varphi(t_3) - \varphi(t_2) - \varphi(t_1)} q_3(t_1) q_3(t_2) q_2(t_3) q_2(t_4) dt, \\ \widehat{\widehat{\wedge}} &= \int_{t_1 < \dots < t_6} e^{\varphi(t_6) + \varphi(t_5) + \varphi(t_4) - \varphi(t_3) - \varphi(t_2) - \varphi(t_1)} q_3(t_1) q_3(t_2) q_3(t_3) q_2(t_4) q_2(t_5) q_2(t_6) dt, \\ \widehat{\widehat{\widehat{\wedge}}} &= \int_{t_1 < \dots < t_6} e^{\varphi(t_6) + \varphi(t_5) - \varphi(t_4) + \varphi(t_3) - \varphi(t_2) - \varphi(t_1)} q_3(t_1) q_3(t_2) q_2(t_3) q_3(t_4) q_2(t_5) q_2(t_6) dt, \end{aligned}$$

and so on. In particular, a symbol of form  ${}_{2j}$ , where  $\wedge$  under the arc  $\wedge$  consists of  $(j-1)$  non-interacting symbols  $\wedge$ , is said to be *connected* of degree  $2j$ . We will simply omit the subscript  $2j$  in  ${}_{2j}$  when the degree is clear. For example,  $\wedge, \widehat{\wedge}$

are connected symbols of degree 2, 4 respectively, and  $\widehat{\widehat{\widehat{\wedge}}}$ ,  $\widehat{\widehat{\wedge}}$  are connected symbols of degree 6, while  $\widehat{\wedge}$  is not a connected symbol.

We introduce the operator  $S$  as follows:

$$(3.12) \quad (Sf)(t) = \int_{x < y < t} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} q_2(y) (q_3 f)(x) dx dy,$$

such that we can express  $\wedge^j = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} (S^j 1)(t)$ .

**3.4. Asymptotic expansion of the transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}$ .** Let  $q-1 \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ . Recall the definition of the transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}(\lambda) = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} e^{izx} u^1(x)$  in Subsection 3.2, where the Jost solution  $u$  satisfies the Lax equation (3.1) and the asymptotics (3.7). We are going to solve the initial value problem (3.1)-(3.7)<sub>1</sub> iteratively, to derive the asymptotic expansion of the transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}$ .

More precisely, we are going to follow the following procedure: We will first make change of variables  $u \mapsto w$  (see (3.16) below) to renormalise the problem (3.1)-(3.7)<sub>1</sub> into the following ODE, where  $q_1, q_2, q_3, q_4$  are given in (\*):

$$(ODE) \quad w_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2iz \end{pmatrix} w + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & q_2 \\ q_3 & q_4 \end{pmatrix} w, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} w(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

such that

$$e^{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q_1 dx} T^{-1}(\lambda) = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w^1(x) \text{ the asymptotic of the first component of } w.$$

Then we formally solve (ODE) iteratively as follows

$$(3.13) \quad w = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} w_n, \quad w_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$w_n(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x \begin{pmatrix} 0 & q_2(x_1) \\ e^{2iz(x-x_1) + \int_{x_1}^x q_4 dx} q_3(x_1) & 0 \end{pmatrix} w_{n-1}(x_1) dx,$$

to derive the following formal asymptotic expansion for  $T^{-1}$ :

$$e^{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q_1 dx} T^{-1}(\lambda) = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w^1(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w_n^1(x) = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \wedge^j,$$

where we noticed  $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w_{2j-1}^1(x) = 0$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w_{2j}^1(x) = \wedge^j$ ,  $j \geq 1$ , with  $\wedge^j$  given in Subsection 3.3.

**Proposition 3.1.** *Let  $q-1 \in \mathcal{S}$ . Let  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$  with  $\zeta = \lambda + z \in \mathcal{U}$  as in Subsection 3.1. Recall the notations in Subsection 3.3. Then the transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}$  defined in Subsection 3.2 expands asymptotically as follows:*

$$(3.14) \quad e^{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q_1 dx} T^{-1}(\lambda) = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} T_{2j}(\lambda), \quad T_{2j} = \wedge^j,$$

and its logarithm expands asymptotically as

$$(3.15) \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q_1 dx + \ln T^{-1}(\lambda) = T_2 + \sum_{j=2}^{\infty} \tilde{T}_{2j},$$

where  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$  is linear combination of connected symbols  $_{2j}$  of degree  $2j$ .

*Proof.* It is convenient to rewrite the Lax equation (3.1) for the Jost solution  $u_l$  (we will omit the subscript  $l$ ) in several steps.

A straightforward calculation shows that

$$\frac{1}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} \left[ \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \bar{q} & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -i\lambda & q \\ \bar{q} & i\lambda \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} |q|^2 - 1 & 0 \\ 0 & |q|^2 - 1 \end{pmatrix} \right] \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \bar{q} & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -iz & 0 \\ 0 & iz \end{pmatrix}.$$

We define the renormalised Jost solution of  $u$  as

$$v = \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \bar{q} & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} u, \text{ such that } u = \frac{1}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \bar{q} & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} v.$$

Hence  $v$  solves (with  $q_1, q_2, q_3, q_4$  defined in (\*))

$$\begin{aligned} v_x &= \frac{1}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} \left[ \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \bar{q} & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -i\lambda & q \\ \bar{q} & i\lambda \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \bar{q} & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & q_x \\ \bar{q}_x & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \bar{q} & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} \right] v \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -iz & 0 \\ 0 & iz \end{pmatrix} v + \begin{pmatrix} -q_1 & q_2 \\ q_3 & q_4 - q_1 \end{pmatrix} v. \end{aligned}$$

We want to remove the upper left entries of the two matrices: Let

$$(3.16) \quad w = -\frac{1}{2iz} e^{izx + \int_{-\infty}^x q_1 dm} v = -\frac{1}{2iz} e^{izx + \int_{-\infty}^x q_1 dm} \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q \\ \bar{q} & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} u,$$

then it satisfies the renormalised (ODE) above. In other words, the renormalized Jost solution  $w$  satisfies the following integral equation

$$w(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \int_{-\infty}^x \begin{pmatrix} 0 & q_2(x_1) \\ e^{2iz(x-x_1) + \int_{x_1}^x q_4 dm} q_3(x_1) & 0 \end{pmatrix} w(x_1) dx_1,$$

with the following asymptotics as  $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$  (recalling  $u$ 's asymptotics (3.7)):

$$\begin{aligned} w(\lambda, x, t) &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty, \\ w(\lambda, x, t) &= \begin{pmatrix} e^{\int_{-\infty}^x q_1 dm} T^{-1}(\lambda) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow +\infty. \end{aligned}$$

Hence we use the iterative procedure in (3.13) to derive the formal asymptotic expansion (3.14) of  $e^{\int_{-\infty}^x q_1 dm} T^{-1}(\lambda) = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w^1(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w_n^1(x)$ .

Finally, it follows from Theorem 3.3<sup>6</sup> in [31] that whenever we have the *formal* expansion as in (3.14):  $g = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} T_{2j}$ ,  $T_{2j} = \wedge^j$ , we will have the formal expansion of its logarithm in (3.15):  $\ln g = T_2 + \sum_{j=2}^{\infty} \tilde{T}_{2j}$ .  $\square$

**3.5. The renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}$ .** Let  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  and let  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ ,  $\zeta = \lambda + z \in \mathcal{U}$ .

Recall  $q_1 = \frac{i\zeta(|q|^2 - 1) - \bar{q}q'}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}$  defined in (\*), then its integral  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q_1 dx$  (which appears in the expansion of  $T^{-1}$ ) may not be well-defined for  $q \in X^s$ . More precisely, by view of the following fact coming from  $\lambda^2 - z^2 = 1$  and  $\zeta = \lambda + z$ :

$$(3.17) \quad \frac{1}{1 - \zeta^2} = \frac{-1}{2z\zeta}, \quad \frac{\zeta}{1 - \zeta^2} = \frac{-1}{2z}, \quad \frac{1}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} = \frac{1}{1 - \zeta^2} - \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{(1 - \zeta^2)(|q|^2 - \zeta^2)},$$

<sup>6</sup>Indeed, we can endow the ring of the formal power series of the unknown symbols  $\wedge, \setminus$  with a shuffle product and a coproduct, and we typically take a commutative subalgebra  $H$  where the symbols  $\wedge, \setminus$  appear in non interacting pairs, such that  $g$  is a group-like element and  $\ln g$  is a primitive element in  $H$ . See also [31, 33, 36] for more shuffle algebra theory.

we rewrite the integral of  $q_1$  when  $q - 1 \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$  as follows:

$$(3.18) \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q_1 dx = -\frac{i}{2z}\mathcal{M} - \frac{i}{2z\zeta}\mathcal{P} + \frac{i}{2z} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)^2}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} dx - \frac{1}{2z\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\bar{q}q'(|q|^2 - 1)}{(|q|^2 - \zeta^2)} dx,$$

where  $\mathcal{M} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1) dx$ ,  $\mathcal{P} = \text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}} q\bar{q}' dx$  are the mass and momentum (in (1.12)), which can be well-defined only under further integrability assumptions on  $|q|^2 - 1, q'$ .

We hence introduce the *renormalised* transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}$  which is the transmission coefficient  $T^{-1}$  module the mass and momentum, such that it is well-defined for  $q \in X^s$ . More precisely, we have

**Theorem 3.1.** *Let  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ . Then there exists a renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  which is holomorphic on the Riemann surface  $\mathcal{R}$  (defined in (3.2)), such that*

- If  $q = 1 + q^0$ ,  $q^0 \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ , then

$$(3.19) \quad \begin{aligned} T_c^{-1}(\lambda) &= e^{-i\mathcal{M}(2z)^{-1} - i\mathcal{P}(2z\zeta)^{-1}} T^{-1}(\lambda), \\ \text{i.e. } -\ln T_c(\lambda) &= -\ln T(\lambda) - i\mathcal{M}(2z)^{-1} - i\mathcal{P}(2z\zeta)^{-1}, \quad \zeta = \lambda + z, \end{aligned}$$

where  $T^{-1}$  is the transmission coefficient defined in Subsection 3.2 and  $\mathcal{M} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1) dx$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}} q\bar{q}' dx$  are the conserved mass and momentum associated to the Gross-Pitaevskii equation, such that

$$(3.20) \quad |T_c^{-1}(\lambda)| \geq 1 \text{ if } \lambda \in \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}} = (-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty), \quad T_c^{-1} \rightarrow 1 \text{ as } |\lambda| \rightarrow \infty.$$

- For any fixed  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ , the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; q)$  is extended uniquely to an analytic function in  $q \in X^s$  (with respect to the analytic structure in Theorem 6.2) and  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; q(t))$  is conserved by the Gross-Pitaevskii flow on the existence time interval of the solution  $q(t)$  (defined in (1.1)).
- $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  has the following asymptotic expansion

$$(3.21) \quad T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = e^{\Phi(\lambda)} \left( 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} T_{2j}(\lambda) \right), \quad T_{2j} = \wedge^j,$$

and its logarithm expands asymptotically as

$$(3.22) \quad \ln T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = \Phi(\lambda) + T_2(\lambda) + \sum_{j=2}^{\infty} \tilde{T}_{2j}(\lambda),$$

where

$$(3.23) \quad \Phi(\lambda) := -\frac{i}{2z} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)^2}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} dx + \frac{1}{2z\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\bar{q}q'(|q|^2 - 1)}{(|q|^2 - \zeta^2)} dx,$$

and  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$  is linear combination of connected symbols  $_{2j}$  of degree  $2j$ . Here the symbols are defined in Subsection 3.3.

- $T_c^{-1}$  satisfies the following properties:

$$(3.24) \quad \begin{aligned} \text{Re } T_c^{-1}(\lambda) &= \text{Re } T_c^{-1}(\bar{\lambda}) \text{ if } (\lambda, z) = (i\sigma, \pm i\frac{\tau}{2}) \in \mathcal{R}, \tau \geq 2, \sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\tau^2}{4} - 1}, \\ T_c^{-1} &\text{ has at most countably many simple zeros } \{\lambda_m\} \subset (-1, 1). \end{aligned}$$

We can define a superharmonic function  $G(z)$  on the upper half plane  $\mathcal{U}$  as follows

$$(3.25) \quad G(z) := \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \operatorname{Re} \left( 4z^2 \ln T_c^{-1}(\pm \sqrt{z^2 + 1}) \right), \quad \operatorname{Im} z > 0, \quad \operatorname{Im} \sqrt{z^2 + 1} \geq 0,$$

such that  $G \geq 0$  on the upper half plane  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $-\Delta G \geq 0$  is a nonnegative measure on the upper half plane  $\mathcal{U}$  as follows

$$(3.26) \quad \nu_G(z) = -\Delta_z G(z) = -\pi \sum_m (2z)^2 \delta_{z=z_m} \geq 0, \quad z_m = i\sqrt{1 - \lambda_m^2} \in i(0, 1],$$

where  $\{\lambda_m\}$  are the simple zeros of  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  in (3.24).

The proof of this theorem will be demonstrated in next section where the functional spaces  $l_\tau^p U^2$ ,  $l_\tau^p V^2$ ,  $l_\tau^p DU^2$  will come into play.

#### 4. PROOF OF THEOREM 3.1

In this section we will prove Theorem 3.1 concerning the well-definedness and the property of the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  in the energy framework  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  in the following steps:

- In Subsection 4.1 we introduce the function spaces  $l_\tau^p U^2$ ,  $l_\tau^p V^2$ ,  $l_\tau^p DU^2$ .
- We derive some preliminary estimates in Subsection 4.2.1. Then we solve the renormalised Lax equation (ODE) rigorously when  $q \in X^s$  and define the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  in Subsection 4.2.2.
- We study the nonnegative superharmonic function  $G(z)$  and conclude the proof of Theorem 3.1 in Subsection 4.3.

**4.1. Function spaces.** In this subsection we will briefly recall the function spaces  $U^2$ ,  $V^2$ ,  $DU^2$  and the inhomogeneous norms  $\|\cdot\|_{l_\tau^p V}$ ,  $V = U^2, V^2, DU^2$ . See [24, 31] for more details of the  $U^2, V^2$  theory.

4.1.1. *Spaces  $U^2, V^2, DU^2$ .* We denote the bounded functions on  $\mathbb{R}$  by  $B(\mathbb{R})$ . We use the spaces  $U^2, V^2 \subset B(\mathbb{R})$  and  $DU^2$  to substitute the Sobolev spaces  $\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{2}} \not\leftrightarrow L^\infty$  and  $\dot{H}^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ . The space  $V^2$  is defined as follows

$$V^2 = \left\{ v \mid \|v\|_{V^2} = \sup_{-\infty < t_1 < \dots < t_N = \infty} \left( \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} |v(t_{j+1}) - v(t_j)|^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} < \infty \right\},$$

where we always set  $v(\infty) = 0$ . In particular, the constant function  $1 \in V^2$  with norm 1. For any finite sequence  $\{\phi_j\}_{j=1}^{N-1}$  with  $\sum_{j=1}^{N-1} |\phi_j|^2 = 1$ , the step function  $\phi = \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} \phi_j 1_{[t_j, t_{j+1})}$  with  $-\infty < t_1 < \dots < t_N = \infty$  is called  $U^2$  atom. We define the space  $U^2$  by

$$U^2 = \left\{ u = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_k \psi_k \mid (c_k)_k \in \ell^1(\mathbb{N}) \text{ and } \psi_k \text{ is } U^2 \text{ atom} \right\},$$

endowed with the  $U^2$ -norm:

$$\|u\|_{U^2} = \inf \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |c_k| \mid u = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_k \psi_k, \quad c_k \in \mathbb{C}, \quad \psi_k \text{ is } U^2 \text{ atom} \right\}.$$

We define the space  $DU^2$  via the distributional derivatives as

$$DU^2 = \{u' \mid u \in U^2\},$$

with the norm  $\|u'\|_{DU^2} = \|u\|_{U^2}$ . Then  $DU^2$  function is a distribution function with the following finite norm:

$$\|f\|_{DU^2} = \sup \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}} f \varphi dt \mid \|\varphi\|_{V^2} \leq 1, \varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \right\}.$$

We have the following pleasant estimates which will be used frequently:

$$(4.1) \quad \begin{aligned} \|f\|_{L^\infty} &\leq \|f\|_{V^2} \leq \|f\|_{L^\infty} + 2\|f'\|_{DU^2}, & \|f\|_{V^2} &\leq 2\|f\|_{U^2}, \\ \|fg\|_{V^2} &\leq \|f\|_{L^\infty}\|g\|_{V^2} + \|f\|_{V^2}\|g\|_{L^\infty}, & \|fg\|_{DU^2} &\leq 2\|f\|_{V^2}\|g\|_{DU^2}, \\ \|f(u)\|_{V^2} &\leq C(f', \|u\|_{L^\infty})\|u\|_{V^2}. \end{aligned}$$

4.1.2. *Space  $l_\tau^p DU^2$ .* We take the localised version of  $U^2, V^2, DU^2$ -norms

$$\|u\|_{l_\tau^p U} = \left\| \|\chi_{\tau, k} u\|_U \right\|_{\ell_k^p(\mathbb{Z})}, \quad U = V^2, U^2 \text{ or } DU^2,$$

where  $\tau \geq 2$  is the frequency scale and  $\chi$  is a smooth function compactly supported on  $[-\frac{2}{3}, \frac{2}{3}]$  with value 1 on the interval  $[-\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3}]$ , such that  $\chi_{\tau, k}$  form a partition of unity:

$$(4.2) \quad 1 = \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \chi_{\tau, k}, \quad \chi_{\tau, k} = \chi\left(\tau \cdot \left(\cdot - \frac{k}{\tau}\right)\right) = \chi(\tau \cdot -k).$$

For any fixed real positive number  $a > 0$ ,  $\|u\|_{l_\tau^p U}$  is equivalent to  $\|\|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau, k} u\|_U\|_{\ell_k^p(\mathbb{Z})}$  with  $\tilde{\chi} = \chi(\cdot/a)$ .

**Proposition 4.1** ([31]). *We have the following properties of the norm  $\|\cdot\|_{l_\tau^p DU^2}$ :*

- *The following inequality describes the effect of the phase shift*

$$(4.3) \quad \|e^{i\xi x} u\|_{l_\tau^p DU^2} \leq C\sqrt{(\tau + |\xi|)/\tau} \|u\|_{l_\tau^p DU^2}.$$

- *The following inequality describes the effect of taking the derivative*

$$(4.4) \quad \|f\|_{l_\tau^p U^2} \lesssim \tau \|f\|_{l_\tau^p DU^2} + \|f'\|_{l_\tau^p DU^2}.$$

- *The  $l_\tau^p DU^2$ ,  $p \geq 2$ -norm and  $\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{p}}$ -norm is related by*

$$\|u\|_{l_\tau^p DU^2} \leq C\tau^{\frac{1}{p} - 1} \|u\|_{\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{p}}}.$$

4.2. **The renormalised transmission coefficient.** Let  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  and  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$  with  $\zeta = \lambda + z \in \mathcal{U}$ . Recall the renormalised Lax equation (ODE) in the proof of Proposition 3.1:

$$(ODE) \quad w_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2iz \end{pmatrix} w + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & q_2 \\ q_3 & q_4 \end{pmatrix} w, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} w(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

and its formally equivalent iterative version (3.13):

$$(4.5) \quad w = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} w_n, \quad w_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad w_n(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \int_{-\infty}^t q_2(x) w_{n-1}^2(x) dx \\ \int_{-\infty}^t e^{\varphi(t) - \varphi(x)} q_3(x) w_{n-1}^1(x) dx \end{pmatrix},$$

$n \geq 1$ , such that if  $q - 1 \in \mathcal{S}$  then

$$e^{\int_{-\infty}^{\cdot} q_1 dx} T^{-1}(\lambda) = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} w^1(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} w_n^1(t),$$



where  $q_1, q_2, q_3, q_4, \varphi$  are given in (\*). In particular, noticing  $w_{2j+1}^1 = w_{2j}^2 = 0$ , we can rewrite (4.5) as

$$(4.6) \quad w^1(t) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} w_{2j}^1(t) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (S^j 1)(t), \quad w^2(t) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} w_{2j+1}^2(t) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} (S_1 S^j 1)(t),$$

where we recall the definition of the operator  $S$  in (3.12):

$$(Sf)(t) = \int_{x < y < t} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} q_2(y) (q_3 f)(x) \, dx \, dy,$$

and we define the operator  $S_1$ :

$$(S_1 f)(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t e^{\varphi(t) - \varphi(x)} (q_3 f)(x) \, dx.$$

We are going to solve (ODE) rigorously and define the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}$  in Subsection 4.2.2. Before that we give some preliminary estimates for  $q, q_2, q_3, q_4$  and  $w_n$ .

4.2.1. *Preliminary estimates.* We first claim the following  $L^\infty$ -estimate:

$$(4.7) \quad \|q\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim 1 + \tau^{\frac{1}{2}} \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2}^{\frac{1}{2}} + \|q'\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2}, \quad \forall \tau > 0,$$

and in particular,  $\|q\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim 1 + \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_2^\infty DU^2} \lesssim 1 + E^s(q)$ .

Indeed, we notice that by the partition of unit (4.2), for any  $\tau > 0$ , at each point  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , there exists  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that the function  $\chi_{\tau,k}$  or  $\bar{\chi}_{\tau,k}$  with  $\bar{\chi} = \chi(\cdot/2)$  taking value 1 at point  $x$ , and thus  $\|q\|_{L^\infty} \leq \sup_k \|\chi_{\tau,k} q\|_{L^\infty} + \sup_k \|\bar{\chi}_{\tau,k} q\|_{L^\infty}$ . By fundamental theorem of calculus:  $(\chi_{\tau,k} q)(x) = \int_{\frac{k-1}{\tau}}^x \chi'_{\tau,k}(y) q(y) \, dy + \int_{\frac{k-1}{\tau}}^x \chi_{\tau,k} q' \, dy$ , we derive (4.7) from Hölder's inequality and (4.1) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} |(\chi_{\tau,k} q)(x)| &\leq \left( \int_{\frac{k-1}{\tau}}^x |\chi'_{\tau,k}| |q|^2 \, dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left( \int_{\frac{k-1}{\tau}}^x |\chi'_{\tau,k}| \, dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \left| \int_{\frac{k-1}{\tau}}^x \chi_{\tau,k} q' \, dy \right| \\ &\lesssim \left( \int_{\frac{k-1}{\tau}}^x |\chi'_{\tau,k}| (|q|^2 - 1) \, dy + \int_{\frac{k-1}{\tau}}^x |\chi'_{\tau,k}| \, dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \|q'\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2} \\ &\lesssim (\tau \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2} + 1)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \|q'\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2}. \end{aligned}$$

By use of the fact (3.11) and (4.7) above, we derive immediately from the estimates in (4.1) the following estimates for  $q$  and  $q_2, q_3, q_4$  defined in (\*):

**Lemma 4.1.** *Let  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ ,  $\zeta = \lambda + z \in \mathcal{U}$ , with  $\tau = 2\text{Im } z > 0$ ,  $\omega = \text{Im } \zeta > 0$ . Let  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\mathbf{q} = (|q|^2 - 1, q') \in H^{s-1} \hookrightarrow l_1^2 DU^2$  and  $q_2, q_3, q_4$  be defined in (\*). Then there exists a constant  $\mathcal{C}_0$ , depending only on (for any fixed  $\tau_1 > 0$ )*

$$(4.8) \quad \omega^{-1}, \tau_1 \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{l_{\tau_1}^\infty DU^2}, \|q'\|_{l_{\tau_1}^\infty DU^2}, \|q'\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2}$$

such that

$$\|q\|_{l_\tau^\infty V^2} \leq \mathcal{C}_0, \quad \|q_\kappa\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2} \leq \mathcal{C}_0 \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2}, \quad \kappa = 2, 3, 4.$$

We are going to study the functions  $w_{2j}^1(t), w_{2j+1}^2(t)$  in (4.6). For notational simplicity we first introduce the function

$$\tilde{\varphi} = \varphi - 2i\text{Re } z x = -\tau x + \int_0^x q_4, \quad \tau = 2\text{Im } z > 0.$$

If  $\mathbf{q} \in l_\tau^\infty DU^2$ , then by Lemma 4.1 (with a possibly larger  $\mathcal{C}_0$ ):

$$(4.9) \quad \left\| \chi_{\tau,k} e^{\int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^y q_4 dx} \right\|_{V^2} \lesssim e^{C_0 \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2}}, \quad \left| e^{\int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^{\frac{k}{\tau}} q_4} \right| \lesssim e^{C_0 \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2} (k-k')}.$$

Therefore we have the following properties for the functions  $w_{2j}(t), w_{2j+1}(t)$ :

**Lemma 4.2.** *Assume the same hypothesis as in Lemma 4.1 and (with a possibly larger  $\mathcal{C}_0$  which depends only on (4.8))*

$$(4.10) \quad \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2} \leq \frac{1}{2\mathcal{C}_0}.$$

Then the functions  $w_{2j}, w_{2j+1}$  given in (4.6) are well-defined, depending analytically on  $\mathbf{q} \in l_\tau^2 DU^2$  and satisfying the following estimates (with an universal constant  $C$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} \|w_{2j}\|_{U^2} &\leq \left(C \frac{|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau}{\tau}\right)^j (\|q_2\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} \|q_3\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2})^j, \\ \|w_{2j+1}\|_{L^\infty} &\leq \left(C \frac{|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau}{\tau}\right)^{j+3/2} (\|q_2\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} \|q_3\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2})^j \|q_3\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2}. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* As  $w_{2j}^1(t) = (S^j 1)(t)$ , we consider

$$\begin{aligned} \|Sf\|_{U^2} &= \left\| \int_{x < y < t} (e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zy} q_2(y)) e^{\tilde{\varphi}(y) - \tilde{\varphi}(x)} (e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} zx} (q_3 f)(x)) dx dy \right\|_{U_t^2} \\ &= \left\| (e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zy} q_2(y)) \int_{-\infty}^y e^{\tilde{\varphi}(y) - \tilde{\varphi}(x)} (e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} zx} (q_3 f)(x)) dx \right\|_{DU_y^2} \\ &\leq \sum_k \left\| (e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zy} \chi_{\tau,k}(y) q_2(y)) \int_{y - \frac{3}{\tau}}^y e^{\tilde{\varphi}(y) - \tilde{\varphi}(x)} (e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} zx} \tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k}(x) (q_3 f)(x)) dx \right\|_{DU_y^2} \\ &\quad + \sum_k \left\| (e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zy} \chi_{\tau,k}(y) q_2(y)) \int_{-\infty}^{y - \frac{3}{\tau}} \sum_{k' \leq k-1} e^{\tilde{\varphi}(y) - \tilde{\varphi}(x)} (e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} zx} \chi_{\tau,k'}(x) (q_3 f)(x)) dx \right\|_{DU_y^2}. \end{aligned}$$

In the above, the first part on the righthand side can be bounded by (recalling (4.1))

$$\begin{aligned} &\sum_k \left\| e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zy} \chi_{\tau,k}(y) q_2(y) e^{\tilde{\varphi}(y) - \tilde{\varphi}(\frac{k}{\tau})} \right\|_{DU_y^2} \left\| \int_{y - \frac{3}{\tau}}^y e^{\tilde{\varphi}(\frac{k}{\tau}) - \tilde{\varphi}(x)} (e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} zx} \tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k}(x) (q_3 f)(x)) dx \right\|_{V_y^2} \\ &\lesssim \sum_k \|e^{2i\operatorname{Re} z \cdot} \chi_{\tau,k} q_2\|_{DU^2} \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} e^{\tilde{\varphi}(y) - \tilde{\varphi}(\frac{k}{\tau})}\|_{V^2} \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} e^{\tilde{\varphi}(\frac{k}{\tau}) - \tilde{\varphi}(x)}\|_{V^2} \|e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} z \cdot} \tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} (q_3 f)\|_{DU^2} \\ &\lesssim \left(\frac{|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau}{\tau}\right) \|\chi_{\tau,k} q_2\|_{l_k^2 DU^2} \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} (q_3 f)\|_{l_k^2 DU^2} \left\| \tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} e^{\pm \int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^x q_4} \right\|_{l_k^\infty V^2}^2, \end{aligned}$$

where we have used (4.3) and  $\|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} e^{-\tau(\cdot - \frac{k}{\tau})}\|_{V^2} \lesssim 1$ , and the second part on the righthand side can be bounded by

$$\begin{aligned} &\sum_k \left\| e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zy} \chi_{\tau,k}(y) q_2(y) e^{\tilde{\varphi}(y) - \tilde{\varphi}(\frac{k}{\tau})} \right\|_{DU_y^2} \\ &\quad \times \sum_{k' \leq k-1} \left\| e^{\tilde{\varphi}(\frac{k'}{\tau}) - \tilde{\varphi}(\frac{k}{\tau})} \right\| \left\| \int_{-\infty}^{y - \frac{3}{\tau}} e^{\tilde{\varphi}(\frac{k'}{\tau}) - \tilde{\varphi}(x)} (e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} zx} (\chi_{\tau,k'} q_3 f)(x)) dx \right\|_{V_y^2} \\ &\lesssim \sum_k \sum_{k' \leq k-1} \|e^{2i\operatorname{Re} z \cdot} \chi_{\tau,k} q_2\|_{DU^2} \|e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} z \cdot} \chi_{\tau,k'} q_3 f\|_{DU^2} \left\| \tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} e^{\pm \int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^{\frac{k}{\tau}} q_4} \right\|_{V^2}^2 e^{-(k-k')} \left| e^{\int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^{\frac{k}{\tau}} q_4} \right|. \end{aligned}$$

Under the smallness condition (4.10), by use of the inequality (4.9), we derive

$$\|S\|_{V^2 \rightarrow U^2} \lesssim \frac{|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau}{\tau} \|q_2\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} \|q_3\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} e^{C_0 \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_\tau^\infty DU^2}} \leq \frac{2(|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau)}{\tau} \|q_2\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2} \|q_3\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2},$$

and hence Lemma 4.2 holds for  $w_{2j} = S^j 1$ .

Similarly we consider the operator  $S_1$  (noticing  $\|\chi_{\tau,k} e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zt}\|_{V^2} \lesssim 1 + |\operatorname{Re} z|/\tau$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} \|S_1 f\|_{L^\infty} &\lesssim \sup_k \|\chi_{\tau,k} e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zt}\|_{V^2} \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} z x} q_3 f\|_{DU^2} \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} e^{\pm \frac{f_x}{\tau} q_4}\|_{V^2}^2 \\ &+ \sup_k \sum_{k' \leq k-1} \|\chi_{\tau,k} e^{2i\operatorname{Re} zt}\|_{V^2} \|\chi_{\tau,k} e^{-2i\operatorname{Re} z x} q_3 f\|_{DU^2} \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} e^{\pm \frac{f_x}{\tau} q_4}\|_{V^2}^2 e^{-(k-k')} \left| e^{\int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^{\frac{k}{\tau}} q_4} \right| \\ &\lesssim \left( \frac{|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau}{\tau} \right)^{\frac{3}{2}} \|q_3\|_{l^\infty DU^2} \|f\|_{V^2} e^{C_0 \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l^\infty DU^2}}, \end{aligned}$$

and hence Lemma 4.2 holds for  $w_{2j+1} = S_1 S^j 1$ .  $\square$

4.2.2. *The renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}$  for  $q \in X^s$ .* In order to emphasize the dependence of the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}$  on  $q$ , we will denote  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = T_c^{-1}(\lambda; q)$  in this subsection.

**Proposition 4.2.** *Let  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ , then the renormalised Lax equation (ODE) has a unique solution  $w \in L^\infty$ .*

We define the renormalised transmission coefficient as

$$T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = e^\Phi \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w^1(x),$$

where  $\Phi = -\frac{i}{2z} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)^2}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} dx + \frac{1}{2z\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\bar{q}q'(|q|^2 - 1)}{(|q|^2 - \zeta^2)} dx$  is given in (3.23). Then

- $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; q)$  is a well-defined holomorphic function in  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$  and depends analytically on  $q \in X^s$  with respect to the analytic structure given in Theorem 6.2 below;
- When  $q - 1 \in \mathcal{S}$ , the relation (3.19):  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = e^{-i\mathcal{M}(2z)^{-1} - i\mathcal{P}(2z\zeta)^{-1}} T^{-1}(\lambda)$ , the properties (3.20):  $|T_c^{-1}(\lambda)| \geq 1$  if  $\lambda \in \mathcal{I}_{cut} = (-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty)$ ,  $T_c^{-1} \rightarrow 1$  as  $|\lambda| \rightarrow \infty$ , and the asymptotic expansions (3.21), (3.22) all hold true;
- Let  $q(t, x) \in \mathcal{C}(I; X^s)$  be a solution of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (in Definition 1.1), then  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; q(t))$  is conserved on the existence time interval  $I$ .
- $\operatorname{Re} T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = \operatorname{Re} T_c^{-1}(\bar{\lambda})$  if  $(\lambda, z) = (i\sigma, \pm i\frac{\sigma}{2}) \in \mathcal{R}$ ,  $\tau \geq 2$ ,  $\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\tau^2}{4} - 1}$ .

*Proof. Step 1. Resolution of (ODE).*

If  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  and there are the points  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$  such that  $\tau = 2\operatorname{Im} z \geq 2$  and the following smallness condition holds (with a possibly larger  $C_0$  than the ones in Lemmas 4.1 and 4.2)

$$(4.11) \quad C_0 \left( \frac{|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau}{\tau} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l^2_\tau DU^2} \leq \frac{1}{2},$$

we have by Lemmas 4.1 and 4.2 that

$$\|w_n\|_{L^\infty} \leq \frac{|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau}{\tau} (C_0 \left( \frac{|\operatorname{Re} z| + \tau}{\tau} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l^2_\tau DU^2})^n.$$

Hence (ODE) (or equivalently (4.6)) has a unique solution  $w = \sum_{n \geq 0} w_n \in L^\infty$ , depending analytically on  $\mathbf{q} \in l^2_\tau DU^2$ .

For general  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  with  $E^s(q) < \infty$ , for any fixed point  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ , we can take two points  $a_0, a_1 \in \mathbb{R}$  such that the smallness condition (4.11) holds for  $q|_{(-\infty, a_0] \cup [a_1, \infty)}$ , by virtue of the embedding  $H^{s-1} \hookrightarrow l^2_1 DU^2$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ . We solve (ODE) as follows:

- The above analysis implies that we can solve (ODE) until the point  $a_0$ :  $w(a_0) = b_0$ ;
- Recalling the change of variables  $u \mapsto w$  in (3.16) which renormalises the Lax equation (3.1) to (ODE), we do the change of variables  $w \mapsto \underline{u}$  to solve the Lax equation (3.1) with the following initial data at  $a_0$

$$\underline{u}(a_0) = e^{iz(a_1 - a_0) + \int_{a_0}^{a_1} q_1 dx} \frac{1}{|q(a_0)|^2 - \zeta^2} \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q(a_0) \\ \bar{q}(a_0) & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} b_0$$

until the point  $a_1$ :  $\underline{u}(a_1)$ . This is possible since  $q \in H^s([a_0, a_1])$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ ;

- We finally solve again (ODE) with the initial data  $b_1 = \begin{pmatrix} -i\zeta & q(a_1) \\ \bar{q}(a_1) & i\zeta \end{pmatrix} \underline{u}(a_1)$  on the semiline  $[a_1, \infty)$ . More precisely, we take  $\tilde{w} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ e^{2iz(x-a_1)} b_1^2 \end{pmatrix} \Big|_{[a_1, \infty)}$  such that  $\dot{w} = w - \tilde{w}$  satisfies

$$\dot{w}_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & q_2 \\ q_3 & q_4 + 2iz \end{pmatrix} \dot{w} + b_1^2 e^{2iz(x-a_1)} \begin{pmatrix} q_2|_{[a_1, \infty)} \\ q_4|_{[a_1, \infty)} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \dot{w}|_{a_1} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1^1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then under the smallness condition (4.11) for  $q|_{[a_1, \infty)}$ , we follow exactly Lemma 4.2<sup>7</sup> to derive the unique solution  $\dot{w}$ . Hence the solution  $w = \dot{w} + \tilde{w} \in L^\infty$  with  $w^1 \in V^2$  exists.

### Step 2. Well-definedness of $T_c^{-1}$ .

When  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ , then  $\Phi < \infty$  by Lemma 4.1. We can define the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = e^\Phi \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w^1(x)$ , which is holomorphic on the Riemann surface  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ .

If  $q - 1 \in \mathcal{S}$ , then by virtue of  $e^{\int_{-\infty}^\infty q_1} T^{-1}(\lambda) = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} w^1(x)$  in Subsection 3.4 and the equality (3.18):  $\int_{-\infty}^\infty q_1 = -\frac{i}{2z} \mathcal{M} - \frac{i}{2z\zeta} \mathcal{P} - \Phi$ , we have the relation (3.19):  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = e^{-i\mathcal{M}(2z)^{-1} - i\mathcal{P}(2z\zeta)^{-1}} T^{-1}(\lambda)$  and hence the asymptotic expansions (3.21) and (3.22) follow from Proposition 3.1. The properties (3.20):  $|T_c^{-1}(\lambda)| \geq 1$  if  $\lambda \in \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}} = (-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty)$ ,  $T_c^{-1} \rightarrow 1$  as  $|\lambda| \rightarrow \infty$ , and the symmetry  $\text{Re } T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = \text{Re } T_c^{-1}(\bar{\lambda})$  for  $(\lambda, z) = (i\sigma, \pm i\frac{\tau}{2}) \in \mathcal{R}$  follow from the results in Subsection 3.2.

Fix  $(\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}$ . Provided with the analytic structure of  $X^s$  in Theorem 6.2 below, for any neighbourhood  $B_r^s(q)$  of  $q$ , we can choose  $a_0, a_1$  (depending on  $E^s(q), r$ ) such that the smallness condition (4.11) holds for  $p|_{(-\infty, a_0] \cup [a_1, \infty)}$  for all  $p \in B_r^s(q)$ . Therefore the corresponding solution  $w_p$  for (ODE) depends analytically on  $(\mathbf{p}|_{(-\infty, a_0]}, \mathbf{p}|_{[a_0, a_1]}, \mathbf{p}|_{[a_1, \infty)}) \in l_r^2 DU^2 \times H^s([a_0, a_1]) \times l_r^2 DU^2$  in  $B_r^s(q)$  and hence  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; \cdot)$  depends analytically on  $q \in X^s$ .

### Step 3. Conservation of $T_c^{-1}$ by the Gross-Pitaevskii flow.

If initially  $q_0 - 1 \in \mathcal{S}$ , then the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) has a unique global-in-time solution  $q \in \mathcal{C}(\mathbb{R}; Z^1)$  (see (1.3) for the definition of Zhidkov's space  $Z^1$ ) by Zhidkov's well-posedness result. By Faddeev-Takhtajan [14],  $(q - 1)(t, \cdot) \in \mathcal{S}$  and  $\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{P}, T^{-1}(\lambda)$  are all conserved by the Gross-Pitaevskii flow, and hence  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda) = e^{-i\mathcal{M}(2z)^{-1} - i\mathcal{P}(2z\zeta)^{-1}} T^{-1}(\lambda)$  is also conserved.

Now let  $q \in \mathcal{C}(I; X^s)$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  be the solution of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation (1.1) with the initial data  $q_0 \in X^s$  on the time interval  $I$ . Then by the density result in Theorem 1.1, we take  $\{q_{0,n}\} \subset 1 + \mathcal{S}$  such that  $d^s(q_{0,n}, q_0) \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . By the continuity of the Gross-Pitaevskii flow in Theorem 2.1, for all  $t \in I$ , the corresponding solutions  $q_n, q$  satisfy  $d^s(q_n(t), q(t)) \rightarrow 0$  and hence  $T_c^{-1}(q_n(t)) \rightarrow T_c^{-1}(q(t))$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  by the analyticity

<sup>7</sup> We can solve the ODE for  $\dot{w}$  by the following iterative procedure:

$$\dot{w} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \dot{w}_n, \quad \dot{w}_{n+1} = \begin{pmatrix} \int_{a_1}^t q_2 \dot{w}_n^2 dx \\ \int_{a_1}^t e^{\varphi(t)-\varphi(x)} q_3 \dot{w}_n^1 dx \end{pmatrix}, \quad \dot{w}_0 = \begin{pmatrix} b_1^1 + b_1^2 \int_{a_1}^t e^{2iz(x-a_1)} q_2 dx \\ b_1^2 \int_{a_1}^t e^{\varphi(t)-\varphi(x)+2iz(x-a_1)} q_4 dx \end{pmatrix}.$$

Although  $\dot{w}_0^2 \neq 0$ , there is an exponential decay in the integrand and the same estimates as in Lemma 4.2 imply the well-definedness of  $\dot{w}_n$  and  $\dot{w}$ . For example, we can control straightforward

$$\dot{w}_0 = \begin{pmatrix} b_1^1 + b_1^2 \int_{a_1 < x_1 < t} e^{2iz(x_1-a_1)} q_2 dx_1 \\ b_1^2 \int_{a_1 < x_1 < t} e^{2iz(t-a_1)+\int_{x_1}^t q_4} q_4 dx_1 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\dot{w}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} b_1^2 \int_{a_1 < x_1 < y_1 < t} e^{2iz(y_1-a_1)+\int_{x_1}^{y_1} q_4} q_2(y_1) q_4(x_1) dx_1 dy_1 \\ b_1^1 \int_{a_1 < x_1 < t} e^{\varphi(t)-\varphi(x_1)} q_3 + b_1^2 \int_{a_1 < x_1 < y_1 < t} e^{\varphi(t)-\varphi(y_1)+2iz(x_1-a_1)} q_2(x_1) q_3(y_1) dx_1 dy_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

in terms of  $\|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_r^2 DU^2}$ .

of  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; \cdot)$  above. The conservation of  $T_c^{-1}(q_m)$  along the Gross-Pitaevskii flow implies the conservation of  $T_c^{-1}(q(t))$  on the existence time interval  $I$ .  $\square$

**4.3. Superharmonic function  $G$  on the upper half-plane.** If  $q - 1 \in \mathcal{S}$ , then  $G(z)$  defined in (3.25) is a well-defined nonnegative superharmonic function on the  $z$ -upper half-plane. Indeed, as  $|T_c^{-1}(\lambda)| \geq 1$  if  $\lambda \in \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}} = (-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty)$ , the trace of  $G(z)$  on the real line is non negative:

$$\mu(\xi) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} (2\xi)^2 \ln |T_c^{-1}(\pm\sqrt{\xi^2 + 1})| \geq 0, \quad \xi \in \mathbb{R}.$$

On the other hand, since the meromorphic function  $T_c$  has only simple poles  $\lambda_m \in (-1, 1)$ , we can take a small enough neighborhood  $\mathcal{V}_m$  of  $\lambda_m$  such that  $T_c(\lambda) = A_0(\lambda) + \frac{A_1(\lambda)}{\lambda - \lambda_m}$  on  $\mathcal{V}_m$ , with  $A_1 \neq 0, A_0$  holomorphic functions on  $\mathcal{V}$ . For  $\lambda_m \neq 0, \lambda \in \mathcal{V}_m$  and correspondingly for  $z \in \mathcal{U}_m = \{z \in \mathcal{U} : (\lambda, z) \in \mathcal{R}, \lambda \in \mathcal{V}_m\}$ , we can write (noticing  $\lambda^2 - \lambda_m^2 = z^2 - z_m^2, z_m = i\sqrt{1 - \lambda_m^2} \in i(0, 1]$ )

$$\ln T_c(\lambda) + \ln T_c(-\lambda) = \ln(A_0(\lambda)(\lambda - \lambda_m) + A_1(\lambda)) + \ln \frac{\lambda + \lambda_m}{z + z_m} + \ln \frac{1}{z - z_m} + \ln T_c(-\lambda).$$

For  $\lambda_m = 0, z_m = i$ , we can still write  $\ln T_c(\lambda) + \ln T_c(-\lambda)$  in  $\mathcal{V}_0$  as

$$\ln(A_0(\lambda)\lambda + A_1(\lambda)) + \ln \frac{1}{z + z_m} + \ln \frac{1}{z - z_m} + \ln(A_0(-\lambda)\lambda - A_1(-\lambda)).$$

Hence  $-\Delta_z G = \Delta_z \text{Re} \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\lambda=\pm\sqrt{1+z^2}} (4z^2 \ln T_c(\lambda))$  is a nonnegative measure (3.26) on  $\mathcal{U}$ . As  $T_c^{-1} \rightarrow 1$  as  $|\lambda| \rightarrow \infty$ , we derive  $G \geq 0$  on the whole upper half plane by maximum principle.

Let  $q \in X^s$ , then by the density argument as in the last part of last subsection, we deduce that  $G$  defined in (3.25) still satisfies  $G \geq 0, -\Delta G \geq 0$  on the upper half plane. Since the meromorphic function  $T_c(q)$  has countably many simple poles  $\{\lambda_m\} \subset \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}}$ , the fact  $-\Delta G = -\pi \sum (2z)^2 \delta_{z=z_m} \geq 0$  implies  $z_m \in i(0, 1]$  and hence  $\lambda_m \in (-1, 1)$ . This completes the proof of (3.24) for general  $q \in X^s$ . Theorem 3.1 follows from Proposition 4.2.

## 5. THE ENERGIES

In this section we will formulate the energies  $\mathcal{E}_\tau^s(q), \tau \geq 2$  for  $q \in X^s, s > \frac{1}{2}$  in terms of the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  defined in Theorem 3.1:

**Theorem 5.1.** *Let  $q \in X^s, s > \frac{1}{2}$ . Let  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  be the renormalised transmission coefficient which is a holomorphic function on the Riemann surface  $\mathcal{R} \ni (\lambda, z)$  and has countably many simple zeros  $\{\lambda_m\} \subset (-1, 1)$  given in Theorem 3.1. Let  $G(z) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \text{Re} (4z^2 \ln T_c^{-1}(\pm\sqrt{z^2 + 1}))$  be the nonnegative superharmonic function on the upper half plane  $\mathcal{U}$ , with  $-\Delta_z G = -\pi \sum_m (2z)^2 \delta_{z=z_m} \geq 0, z_m = i\sqrt{1 - \lambda_m^2} \in i(0, 1]$ , given by Theorem 3.1.*

*Then for  $N = [s - 1]$ ,  $G(i\tau/2)$  has the following finite expansion as  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$  (recalling the notations  $\mathcal{H}^l$  in the asymptotic expansion (1.13)):*

$$(5.1) \quad G\left(\frac{i\tau}{2}\right) = \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} \tau^{-2l-1} + \mathcal{H}^{>2N+2} \left(\frac{i\tau}{2}\right), \quad \mathcal{H}^{>2N+2} = o(\tau^{-2s+1}),$$

*such that the trace of  $G$  on the real line  $\mu$  exists, the measure  $(1 + \xi^2)^N \mu$  is finite and the following trace formula for  $\mathcal{H}^{2l+2}, 0 \leq l \leq N$  holds:*

$$(5.2) \quad \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \xi^{2l+2} \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \ln |T_c^{-1}(\pm\sqrt{\xi^2/4 + 1})| d\xi - \frac{1}{2l+3} \sum_m \text{Im} (2z_m)^{2l+3}.$$

We define a family of energy functionals  $(\mathcal{E}_{\tau'}^s)_{\tau' \geq 2} : X^s \mapsto [0, \infty)$  as follows:

$$(5.3) \quad \begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_{\tau'}^s(q) = & -\frac{2}{\pi} \sin(\pi(s-1)) \int_{\tau'}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau'^2)^{s-1} \left( G(i\frac{\tau}{2}) - \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} \tau^{-2l-1} \right) d\tau \\ & + \sum_{l=0}^N \tau'^{2(s-1-l)} \binom{s-1}{l} \mathcal{H}^{2l+2}, \text{ with } N \leq s-1 < N+1, \end{aligned}$$

such that  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau'}^s$  is analytic in  $q \in X^s$  and we have the following trace formula for  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau'}^s$ :

$$(5.4) \quad \mathcal{E}_{\tau'}^s = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (\xi^2 + \tau'^2)^{s-1} d\mu_{G(\frac{\tau}{2})} - \sum_m \text{Im} \int_0^{2z_m} w^2 (w^2 + \tau'^2)^{s-1} dw.$$

Then there exists a universal constant  $C \geq 2$  (depending only on  $s$ ) such that whenever  $(q, \tau_0) \in X^s \times [C, \infty)$  satisfying

$$(5.5) \quad \frac{1}{\tau_0} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 DU^2} < \frac{1}{2C}, \text{ with } \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 DU^2}^2 = \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 DU^2}^2 + \|q'\|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 DU^2}^2,$$

$\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s(q)$  is equivalent to the square of the energy norm  $(E_{\tau_0}^s(q))^2$  in the sense of (1.19):

$$(5.6) \quad |\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s - (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2| \leq \frac{C}{\tau_0} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 DU^2} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2.$$

**5.1. The framework.** We are going to introduce the assumptions and the notations which will be used throughout this section.

5.1.1. *Assumption.* We restrict ourselves on the imaginary axis in this section:

$$(5.7) \quad \begin{aligned} (\lambda, z) = (i\sigma, i\tau/2) \in \mathcal{R}, \quad \tau \geq \tau_0 \geq 2, \quad \sigma = \sqrt{\tau^2/4 - 1} \in [\tau/2 - 1, \tau/2), \\ \zeta = \lambda + z = i\omega, \quad \omega = \sigma + \tau/2 \in [\tau/2, \tau). \end{aligned}$$

Here  $\tau_0 \geq 2$  is a constant (to be chosen sufficiently large later), such that the following assumption holds:

$$(5.8) \quad \left| |q|^2 - 1 \right| \leq \frac{1}{64} \tau_0^2, \quad q \in X^s, \quad s > \frac{1}{2}.$$

5.1.2. *Functions  $q_2, q_3, q_4$ .* We evaluate the functions  $q_2, q_3, q_4$  defined in (\*) on the imaginary axis to arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} q_2 &= -\frac{1}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \left( \frac{1}{\omega} q' \right) + \frac{1}{\omega} \frac{q}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \left( \frac{1}{\omega} (|q|^2 - 1) \right), \\ q_3 &= \frac{1}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \left( \frac{1}{\omega} \bar{q}' \right) + \frac{1}{\omega} \frac{\bar{q}}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \left( \frac{1}{\omega} (|q|^2 - 1) \right), \\ q_4 &= \frac{-2}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \left( \frac{1}{\omega} (|q|^2 - 1) \right) + \left( \frac{\frac{1}{\omega} q}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \left( \frac{1}{\omega} \bar{q}' \right) - \frac{\frac{1}{\omega} \bar{q}}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \left( \frac{1}{\omega} q' \right) \right). \end{aligned}$$

Notice that  $q_2, q_3, q_4$  are all linear combinations of the components in

$$(5.9) \quad Q = \frac{1}{\tau} (|q|^2 - 1, q', \bar{q}'),$$

up to coefficients being some polynomials of the following form

$$(5.10) \quad P = P \left( \frac{1}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1}, \frac{1}{\tau} q, \frac{1}{\tau} \bar{q}, \frac{1}{\tau^2} (|q|^2 - 1) \right),$$

and for notational simplicity, we denote  $O$  to be the following set:

$$(5.11) \quad O := \left\{ P \cdot \frac{1}{\tau} (|q|^2 - 1), P \cdot \frac{1}{\tau} q', P \cdot \frac{1}{\tau} \bar{q}' \mid P \text{ is any polynomial of form (5.10)} \right\}.$$

Under the assumption (5.8), we are going to estimate  $\|q_\kappa\|_{l^2_\tau DU^2}$  as follows (similar but more accurate as the estimates in Lemma 4.1):

$$(5.12) \quad \begin{aligned} \|q_\kappa\|_{l^2_\tau DU^2} &\lesssim C_\tau c_\tau, \quad \kappa = 2, 3, 4, \quad \text{with } C_\tau = 1 + \frac{1}{\tau} \|q'\|_{l^\infty DU^2}, \\ c_\tau(q) &= \frac{1}{\tau} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l^2_\tau DU^2(\mathbb{R})} = \frac{1}{\tau} (\| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{l^2_\tau DU^2}^2 + \|\partial_x q\|_{l^2_\tau DU^2}^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} := \|Q\|_{l^2_\tau DU^2}. \end{aligned}$$

5.1.3. *Asymptotic expansion of  $\ln T_c^{-1}$  on the imaginary axis.* Recall the asymptotic expansions of  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  and  $\ln T_c^{-1}$  in Theorem 3.1:

$$(5.13) \quad \begin{aligned} T_c^{-1}(\lambda) &= e^\Phi \left( 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} T_{2j} \right), \quad T_{2j} = \wedge^j, \\ \ln T_c^{-1}(\lambda) &= \Phi + T_2 + \sum_{j=2}^{\infty} \tilde{T}_{2j}, \quad \Phi(\lambda) := -\frac{i}{2z} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)^2}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} dx + \frac{1}{2z\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\bar{q}q'(|q|^2 - 1)}{(|q|^2 - \zeta^2)} dx, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$  is linear combination of *connected* symbols  $_{2j}$  of degree  $2j$ . Recall the symbols in Subsection 3.3:

$$(5.13) \quad \wedge^j = \int_{x_1 < y_1 < \dots < x_j < y_j} \prod_{n=1}^j e^{\varphi(y_n) - \varphi(x_n)} q_3(x_n) q_2(y_n) dx dy, \quad \varphi(x) = -\tau x + \int_0^x q_4,$$

$$(5.14) \quad _{2j} = \int_{t_1 < \dots < t_{2j}} \prod_{n=1}^{2j-1} e^{\delta_n(\varphi(t_{n+1}) - \varphi(t_n))} q_{\kappa_1}(t_1) \dots q_{\kappa_{2j}}(t_{2j}) dt,$$

for some  $\delta_n \in \{1, \dots, j\}$  with  $\delta_1 = \delta_{2j-1} = 1$  and  $\kappa_n \in \{2, 3\}$  with  $\kappa_1 = 3, \kappa_{2j} = 2$ . For notational simplicity, we also introduce the following symbol

$$(5.15) \quad = \int_{x < y} (e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} - e^{-\tau(y-x)}) q_2(y) q_3(x) dx dy.$$

We will rewrite  $(\Phi + T_2)$  in the asymptotic expansion of  $\ln T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  above in Appendix A as:

$$\Phi + T_2 = \tilde{T}_2 + \tilde{T}_3,$$

where  $\tilde{T}_2, \tilde{T}_3$  identify the *quadratic* and *cubic* terms (in terms of elements in the set  $O$ ) in the expansion of  $\ln T_c^{-1}$  respectively. More precisely we will prove in Appendix A that

**Lemma 5.1.** *The asymptotic expansion (3.22) for the logarithm of the transmission coefficient  $\ln T_c^{-1}$  reads on the imaginary axis (5.7) as follows*

$$(5.16) \quad \ln T_c^{-1}(i\sigma) = \tilde{T}_2(i\sigma) + \tilde{T}_3(i\sigma) + \sum_{j \geq 2} \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma),$$

where  $\tilde{T}_2$  identifies the quadratic part in the expansion of  $\ln T_c^{-1}(i\sigma)$ :

$$(5.17) \quad \begin{aligned} \tilde{T}_2(i\sigma) &= \frac{-1}{\tau^2} \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} \left( (|q|^2 - 1)(y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) + q'(y)\bar{q}'(x) \right) dx dy \\ &\quad - i \frac{\tau + 2\omega}{\tau^3 \omega^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \text{Im}(q'\bar{q})(|q|^2 - 1) dx \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{\tau^3 \omega} \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} \left( q'(y)\bar{q}'(x) - \bar{q}'(y)q'(x) \right) dx dy, \end{aligned}$$

$\tilde{T}_3(i\sigma)$  identifies the cubic part and reads as linear combination of finite integrals of the following type

$$(5.18) \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{\tau^2} \right)^2 h_1 dx, \quad , \quad \int_{x < y \text{ or } x > y} e^{-\tau|y-x|} \left( \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{\tau^2} h_1 \right)(y) h_2(x) dx dy, \\ \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} h_1(y) \int_x^y \left( \frac{q' \text{ or } \bar{q}'}{\tau} \right)(m) dm h_2(x) dx dy, \quad h_1, h_2 \in O,$$

and  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$ ,  $j \geq 2$  remains the same linear combination of integrals  $_{2j}$ .

**Remark 5.1.** If  $q - 1 \in \mathcal{S}$ , then by integration by parts  $\int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} f(y)g(x) dx dy = \frac{1}{\tau} \int_{\mathbb{R}} fg - \frac{1}{\tau} \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} f(y)g'(x) dx dy$  we can expand  $\tilde{T}_2(i\sigma)$  as

$$\tilde{T}_2(i\sigma) = -\frac{1}{\tau^3} \int_{\mathbb{R}} ((|q|^2 - 1)^2 + |q'|^2) dx + \frac{1}{\tau^4} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (q' \bar{q}'' - 3i \operatorname{Im}(q' \bar{q})(|q|^2 - 1)) dx + O\left(\frac{1}{\tau^5}\right),$$

while  $\tilde{T}_3(i\sigma) = O\left(\frac{1}{\tau^5}\right)$ ,  $T_{2j}(i\sigma) = O\left(\frac{1}{\tau^{3j}}\right)$ ,  $\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma) = O\left(\frac{1}{\tau^{4j-1}}\right)$ , as  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ . Recalling  $\ln T^{-1}(\lambda) = i\mathcal{M}(2z)^{-1} + i\mathcal{P}(2z\zeta)^{-1} + \ln T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$ , we derive the finite expansion until the fourth-order for  $\ln T^{-1}(i\sigma) = \frac{1}{\tau}\mathcal{M} - i\frac{1}{\tau^2}\mathcal{P} - \frac{1}{\tau^3}\mathcal{H}^2 + i\frac{1}{\tau^4}\mathcal{H}^3 + O\left(\frac{1}{\tau^5}\right)$ , as  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ , which can be compared with (1.13).

**5.2. Trace formula and the organisation of the section.** In this section we will recall the trace formula (from e.g. [2, 31]) for the nonnegative superharmonic functions  $G$  on the upper half-plane  $\mathcal{U}$  given in Theorem 3.1. As a consequence we derive the formulation of the energy norm  $E_{\tau_0}^s(q)$  in terms of the quadratic term  $\tilde{T}_2(i\sigma)$ , as well as the equivalence relation (5.6) between  $E_{\tau_0}^s(q)$  and the energy  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s(q)$  (defined in (5.3)).

**5.2.1. Trace formula.** Recall the superharmonic function

$$G(z) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\pm} \operatorname{Re} (4z^2 \ln T_c^{-1}(\pm \sqrt{z^2 + 1}))$$

defined on the upper half-plane  $\mathcal{U}$  in Theorem 3.1, with the nonnegative Radon measure  $\mu$  as the trace of  $G$  on the real line  $\mathbb{R}$  and the nonnegative Radon measure  $\nu = -\Delta_z G = -\pi \sum_m (2z)^2 \delta_{z=z_m}$  on the upper half-plane  $\mathcal{U}$ ,  $z_m \in i(0, 1]$ . We define

$$\Xi_s(z) = \operatorname{Im} \int_0^z w^2 (w^2 + \tau_0)^s dw$$

for  $z$  in the upper half plane.

**Lemma 5.2.** *The followings hold true:*

- *Representation of  $G$  through  $\mu, \nu$ .*

*The function  $G$  can be represented in terms of the Poisson kernel and the fundamental solution of the Laplace equation as follows:*

$$(5.19) \quad G(z) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\operatorname{Im} z}{|z - \xi|^2} d\mu(\xi) + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathcal{U}} \ln \left| \frac{z - \bar{\zeta}}{z - \zeta} \right| d\nu(\zeta).$$

- *Expansion of  $G$  at  $+i\infty$ .*

*If two measures  $(1 + |\xi|^2)^N \mu$ ,  $\operatorname{Im} z(1 + |z|^2)^N \nu$  are finite, then we have the following precise expansion of  $G$  at  $+i\infty$ :*

$$(5.20) \quad G\left(\frac{i\tau}{2}\right) = \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} \tau^{-2l-1} + \mathcal{H}^{>2N+2}, \quad \mathcal{H}^{>2N+2} = o(\tau^{-2N-1}),$$

where  $\mathcal{H}^{2l+2}$  is given in (5.2) and

$$\mathcal{H}^{>2N+2} = (-1)^{N+1} \left( \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\xi^{2N+2}}{\tau^2 + \xi^2} d\mu_{G(\frac{i}{2})} - \sum_m \operatorname{Im} \int_0^{2z_m} \frac{w^{2N+4}}{\tau^2 + w^2} dw \right) \tau^{-2N-1}.$$



- *Trace formula of  $G$ .*  
Let  $N = [s - 1]$ . Then the following trace formula holds

$$(5.21) \quad \begin{aligned} & -\frac{2 \sin(\pi(s-1))}{\pi} \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \left( G\left(\frac{i\tau}{2}\right) - \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} \tau^{-2l-1} \right) d\tau \\ & + \sum_{l=0}^N \tau_0^{2(s-1-l)} \binom{s-1}{l} \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (\xi^2 + \tau_0^2)^{s-1} d\mu_{G(\cdot/2)} - \sum_m \Xi_{s-1}(2z_m), \end{aligned}$$

whenever either side is finite.

We have the following description of the energy norm by the trace formula:

**Lemma 5.3.** *Let  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ , then the energy norm defined in (1.16):*

$$(E_{\tau_0}^s(q))^2 = \|\mathbf{q}\|_{H_{\tau_0}^{s-1}}^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}} (\xi^2 + \tau_0^2)^{s-1} (|\widehat{|q|^2} - 1|^2 + |\widehat{q'}|^2)(\xi) d\xi$$

can be identified as the integral of the quadratic term  $\tilde{T}_2(i\sigma)$  in (5.17) as

$$(5.22) \quad \begin{aligned} (E_{\tau_0}^s(q))^2 &= -\frac{2}{\pi} \sin(\pi(s-1)) \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \mathcal{H}_2^{>2N+2}(i\sigma) d\tau \\ &+ \sum_{l=0}^N \binom{s-1}{l} \tau_0^{2(s-1-l)} \mathcal{H}_2^{2l+2}, \quad N = [s-1], \end{aligned}$$

where  $\mathcal{H}_2^{2l+2} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \xi^{2l} (|\widehat{|q|^2} - 1|^2 + |\widehat{q'}|^2)(\xi) d\xi \lesssim \tau_0^{-2(s-1-l)} (E_{\tau_0}^s(q))^2$  and

$$\mathcal{H}_2^{>2N+2}(i\sigma) = \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_2)(i\sigma) - \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l \mathcal{H}_2^{2l+2} \tau^{-2l-1} = o(\tau^{1-2s}), \quad \tau \rightarrow \infty.$$

*Proof.* The proof (with  $\tau_0 = 1$ ) in [31] works here and we give here the proof for readers' convenience. We make use of the unitary Fourier transform and inverse Fourier transform

$$\hat{f}(\xi) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-ix\xi} f(x) dx, \quad f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{ix\xi} \hat{f}(\xi) d\xi,$$

to write for any function  $f \in H^s$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Re} \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} \bar{f}(x) f(y) dx dy &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{1}{\tau - i\xi} e^{iy\eta - iy\xi} \hat{f}(\eta) \overline{\hat{f}(\xi)} dy d\xi d\eta \\ &= \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{1}{\tau - i\xi} \hat{f}(\xi) \overline{\hat{f}(\xi)} d\xi = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\tau}{\tau^2 + \xi^2} |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi, \end{aligned}$$

where the righthand side is the value at the point  $i\tau$  of the harmonic function on the upper half plane with the trace  $\pi|\hat{f}(\xi)|^2$  on the real axis. Therefore noticing from the definition (5.17) that

$$\operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_2)(i\sigma) = \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} \left( (|q|^2 - 1)(y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) + q'(y)\bar{q}'(x) \right) dx dy,$$

let  $f = |q|^2 - 1$  or  $q'$  above, then (5.22) follows from the trace formula (5.21).  $\square$

5.2.2. *Ideas and the organisation of the rest of this section.* Recall the notations on the imaginary axis (5.7) and the expansion (5.16):

$$\ln T_c^{-1}(i\sigma) = \tilde{T}_2(i\sigma) + \tilde{T}_3(i\sigma) + \sum_{j \geq 2} \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma).$$

Recall the energy  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s$  defined in (5.3) (noticing the symmetry  $\operatorname{Re} \ln T_c^{-1}(i\sigma) = \operatorname{Re} \ln T_c^{-1}(-i\sigma)$  in (3.24) and hence  $G(i\frac{\tau}{2}) = \operatorname{Re} (4z^2 \ln T_c^{-1})(i\sigma)$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s &= -\frac{2}{\pi} \sin(\pi(s-1)) \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \left( \operatorname{Re} (4z^2 \ln T_c^{-1})(i\sigma) - \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} \tau^{-2l-1} \right) d\tau \\ &\quad + \sum_{l=0}^N \tau_0^{2(s-1-l)} \binom{s-1}{l} \mathcal{H}^{2l+2}. \end{aligned}$$

Recall the formulation of the energy norm  $(E_{\tau_0}^s)^2$  in (5.22).

In order to show the equivalence (5.6) between  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s$  and  $(E_{\tau_0}^s)^2$ , it suffices to estimate, if  $s \in (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$  such that  $[s-1] < 1$ , their difference  $|\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s - (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2|$  which concerns cubic or higher order terms in the expansion of  $\ln T_c^{-1}(i\sigma)$ :

$$(5.23) \quad |\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s - (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2| = \left| \frac{2}{\pi} \sin(\pi(s-1)) \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \operatorname{Re} \left( 4z^2 (\tilde{T}_3 + \sum_{j \geq 2} \tilde{T}_{2j}) \right) (i\sigma) d\tau \right|$$

by  $C c_{\tau} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2$  whenever  $c_{\tau} < \frac{1}{2C}$ .

If  $s \geq \frac{3}{2}$  is large enough<sup>8</sup>, then we also have to do finite expansions for  $\tilde{T}_3(i\sigma)$  and  $\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)$ ,  $2 \leq j \leq s$  until  $k$ -th order,  $k = [2s]$ :

$$\tau^2 \tilde{T}_3(i\sigma) = \sum_{l=3}^k \mathcal{H}_3^l \tau^{-l+1} + \mathcal{H}_3^{>k}(i\sigma), \quad \tau^2 \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma) = \sum_{l=2j}^k \mathcal{H}_{2j}^l \tau^{-l+1} + \mathcal{H}_{2j}^{>k}(i\sigma) \text{ as } \sigma \rightarrow \infty,$$

such that the difference above (5.23) is replaced by

$$(5.24) \quad \begin{aligned} |\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s - (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2| &= \left| \frac{2}{\pi} \sin(\pi(s-1)) \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \operatorname{Re} \left( \mathcal{H}_3^{>k} + \sum_{2 \leq j \leq s} \mathcal{H}_{2j}^{>k} \right. \right. \\ &\quad \left. \left. + \tau^2 \sum_{j > s} \tilde{T}_{2j} \right) (i\sigma) d\tau - \sum_{l=1}^{[s-1]} \tau_0^{2(s-1-l)} \binom{s-1}{l} \operatorname{Re} \left( \mathcal{H}_3^{2l+2} + \sum_{2 \leq j \leq s} \mathcal{H}_{2j}^{2l+2} \right) \right|. \end{aligned}$$

We are going to follow the strategy and make use of the estimates in Section 6, [31] to control the differences (5.23) and (5.24). The rest of this section is organised as follows:

- We establish the estimates for high order terms  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$ ,  $j > s$  (and  $\tilde{T}_3$  if  $s \in (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$ ) and low order terms  $\tilde{T}_3, \tilde{T}_{2j}$ ,  $2 \leq j < s$  for  $s > \frac{3}{2}$  in Subsections 5.3 and 5.4 respectively;
- We complete the proof of Theorem 5.1 in Subsection 5.5.

**5.3. High order terms.** We are going to derive the estimates for high order terms in this section, which can be viewed as a more accurate version of the estimates in Section 4.2 on the imaginary axis setting:

- We derive first some preliminary estimates for  $q_2, q_3, q_4, P$  and then the estimates for the integrals  $\wedge^j_{,2j}$ , in Subsection 5.3.1;
- We make use of these estimates to control the high order terms in Subsection 5.3.2, which can control the difference (5.23) when  $s \in (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$ .

We will use the estimates (4.1) and (4.4) freely through this section.

<sup>8</sup> Recalling Remark 5.1:  $\mathcal{H}_3^2 = 0$ , we indeed have to do finite expansions only when  $s \geq 2$ .

5.3.1. *Preliminary estimates.* Recall the notations in Subsection 5.1 and we are going to estimate  $q_2, q_3, q_4, P, \wedge^j, 2j, ,$  in terms of

$$C_\tau = 1 + \frac{1}{\tau} \|q'\|_{l^\infty_{DU^2}} \text{ and } \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l^p_{DU^2}} = \|(|q|^2 - 1)\|_{l^p_{DU^2}}, \|q'\|_{l^p_{DU^2}}\|_{\ell^p}.$$

**Lemma 5.4.** *Assume (5.7) and (5.8):  $(\lambda, z) = (i\sigma, i\tau/2) \in \mathcal{R}$ ,  $\tau \geq \tau_0 \geq 2$ ,  $\zeta = \lambda + z = i\omega$ ,  $\omega \in [\frac{\tau}{2}, \tau)$  and  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  such that  $\| |q|^2 - 1 \| \leq \frac{1}{64} \tau_0^2$ .*

*Then the following estimates hold for  $P$  defined in (5.10) and for  $p \in [1, \infty]$ :*

$$\|P\|_{l^\infty_{V^2}} \lesssim C_\tau, \quad \|q_\kappa\|_{l^p_{DU^2}} + \left\| \frac{1}{\tau^2} (|q|^2 - 1) \right\|_{l^p_{DU^2}} \lesssim \frac{C_\tau}{\tau} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l^p_{DU^2}}, \quad \kappa = 2, 3, 4.$$

*Proof.* We firstly derive straightforward from the assumption (5.8) that

$$\|q\|_{l^\infty_{V^2}} \lesssim \|q\|_{L^\infty} + \|q'\|_{l^\infty_{DU^2}} \lesssim \tau(1 + \tau^{-1} \|q'\|_{l^\infty_{DU^2}}) = \tau C_\tau.$$

Recalling the partition of unity (4.2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \frac{1}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \right\|_{l^\infty_{V^2}} &\leq 1 + \sup_k \left\| \frac{\chi_{\tau,k}}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1} \right\|_{V^2} \\ &\leq 1 + 2 \sup_k \sup_{\frac{k-1}{\tau} = t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_N = \frac{k+1}{\tau}} \left( \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} ((\chi_{\tau,k}(t_{j+1}) - \chi_{\tau,k}(t_j))^2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + (\omega^{-2}(|q(t_{j+1})|^2 - |q(t_j)|^2))^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim 1 + \tau^{-1} \|q'\|_{l^\infty_{DU^2}} = C_\tau, \end{aligned}$$

where we used  $\| |q|^2 - 1 \| \leq \frac{1}{64} \tau_0^2$  and  $|q(t_{j+1}) - q(t_j)| \lesssim \|q'\|_{l^\infty_{DU^2}}$ . Similarly we have the same estimate for  $\frac{1}{\tau^2} (|q|^2 - 1)$  and hence for the polynomial  $P$ . Therefore the estimates for  $q_\kappa$ ,  $\kappa = 2, 3, 4$  and  $\| \frac{1}{\tau^2} (|q|^2 - 1) \|_{l^p_{DU^2}}$  follow from (4.1) and (4.4).  $\square$

We claim the following estimates similar as (4.9) (recalling  $\chi_{\tau,k}$  in the partition of unity (4.2) and the assumption (5.8)):

$$(5.25) \quad \begin{aligned} \left\| \chi_{\tau,k} \left( e^{\frac{f_k^x}{\tau} q_4 dx'} - 1 \right) \right\|_{V^2} &\lesssim C_\tau \tilde{c}_{\tau,k}, \quad \left\| \chi_{\tau,k} e^{\frac{f_k^x}{\tau} q_4 dx'} \right\|_{V^2} \lesssim 1, \\ \left| e^{\frac{f_{k'}^x}{\tau} q_4 dx} - 1 \right| &\lesssim e^{\frac{1}{2}(k-k')} C_\tau \sum_{k''=k'}^k \tilde{c}_{\tau,k''}, \quad \left| e^{\frac{f_{k'}^x}{\tau} q_4 dx} \right| \lesssim e^{\frac{1}{4}(k-k')}, \quad k' \leq k-1, \end{aligned}$$

with  $\tilde{c}_{\tau,k} = \frac{1}{\tau} (\|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} (|q|^2 - 1)\|_{DU^2} + \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} q'\|_{DU^2})$ ,  $\tilde{\chi} = \chi(\frac{1}{12} \cdot)$ . Indeed, we write

$$q_4 = a + ib, \quad a = \operatorname{Re} q_4 = \frac{-2(|q|^2 - 1)/\omega}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1}, \quad b = \operatorname{Im} q_4 = \frac{2\operatorname{Im}(q\bar{q}')/\omega^2}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2 + 1}.$$

Since we derive from (5.8) that  $\|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k}(x) \int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^x a dx'\|_{V^2} \leq \frac{8}{\tau} \|a\|_{L^\infty} \leq \frac{1}{2}$  with  $\tilde{\chi} = \chi(\frac{1}{2} \cdot)$  supported on  $[-\frac{8}{3}, \frac{8}{3}]$  such that  $\tilde{\chi}\chi = \chi$ , we have the following estimate from Lemma 5.4:

$$\left\| \chi_{\tau,k}(x) \left( e^{\frac{f_k^x}{\tau} a dx'} - 1 \right) \right\|_{V^2} \lesssim \left\| \tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k}(x) \int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^x a dx' \right\|_{V^2} \lesssim \frac{C_\tau}{\tau} \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} (|q|^2 - 1)\|_{DU^2}.$$

On the other hand, since  $|e^{ic}| \leq 1$ ,  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ , we have

$$\left\| \chi_{\tau,k}(x) \left( e^{\frac{f_k^x}{\tau} b dx'} - 1 \right) \right\|_{V^2} \lesssim \left\| \tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k}(x) \int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^x b dx' \right\|_{V^2} \lesssim \frac{C_\tau}{\tau} \|\tilde{\chi}_{\tau,k} q'\|_{DU^2}.$$

Then the first line of the estimate (5.25) follows. Similarly we have the second line of (5.25) for  $k' \leq k-1$ : We derive straightforward from (5.8) that  $\left| e^{\frac{f_{k'}^x}{\tau} q_4 dx} \right| \leq \left| e^{\frac{f_{k'}^x}{\tau} a dx} \right| \leq$

$e^{\frac{1}{4}(k-k')}$ , and hence by Lemma 5.4

$$\left| e^{\int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^{\frac{k}{\tau}} q_4 dx} - 1 \right| \leq e^{\frac{1}{4}(k-k')} \left| \int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^{\frac{k}{\tau}} q_4 dx \right| \lesssim (e^{\frac{1}{4}(k-k')}(k-k')) C_\tau \sum_{k''=k'}^k \tilde{c}_{\tau, k''}.$$

Therefore we have the following estimates for  $\wedge^j$ ,  $_{2j}$  ,:

**Lemma 5.5.** *Assume the same hypothesis as in Lemma 5.4. Then we have the following estimates:*

$$(5.26) \quad \begin{aligned} |\wedge^j| &\lesssim (\|q_2\|_{L^2_{DU^2}} \|q_3\|_{L^2_{DU^2}})^j, \quad |_{2j}| \lesssim \max\{\|q_2\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}, \|q_3\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}\}^{2j}, \\ &\lesssim \frac{C_\tau}{\tau} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{L^3_{DU^2}} \|q_2\|_{L^3_{DU^2}} \|q_3\|_{L^3_{DU^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* We follow the decomposition idea in the proof of Lemma 4.2 to derive that

$$\begin{aligned} &\left\| \int_{x < y < t} (e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} - e^{-\tau(y-x)}) g(y) h(x) dx dy \right\|_{U^2_y} \\ &\lesssim \sum_k \left\| \int_{y - \frac{3}{\tau}}^y (\chi_{\tau, k} g)(y) e^{-\tau(y-x)} \left( e^{\int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^y q_4} - 1 + e^{\int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^y q_4} \left( e^{\int_{x'}^{\frac{k}{\tau}} q_4} - 1 \right) \right) (\tilde{\chi}_{\tau, k} h)(x) dx \right\|_{DU^2_y} \\ &\quad + \sum_{k' \leq k-1} e^{-(k-k')} \left\| \int_{-\infty}^{y - \frac{3}{\tau}} (\chi_{\tau, k} g)(y) \left( e^{\int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^y q_4} - 1 + e^{\int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^y q_4} \left( e^{\int_{x'}^{\frac{k}{\tau}} q_4} - 1 \right) \right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + e^{\int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^y q_4} e^{\int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^y q_4} \left( e^{\int_{x'}^{\frac{k'}{\tau}} q_4} - 1 \right) (\chi_{\tau, k'} h)(x) dx \right\|_{DU^2_y}, \end{aligned}$$

and hence we take  $g = q_2$  and  $h = q_3$  to arrive at the estimate for  $\|$  in (5.26) by virtue of the claim (5.25).

Similarly, since  $e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} = e^{-\tau(y-x)} e^{\int_{\frac{k}{\tau}}^y q_4} e^{\int_{\frac{k'}{\tau}}^y q_4} e^{\int_{x'}^{\frac{k'}{\tau}} q_4}$ , we have the following estimate for the operator  $S$  (defined in (3.12)) from the claim (5.25):

$$\|S\|_{V^2 \rightarrow U^2} \lesssim \|q_2\|_{L^2_{DU^2}} \|q_3\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}, \quad S(f)(t) = \int_{x < y < t} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} q_2(y) (q_3 f)(x) dx dy,$$

and hence the estimate for  $\wedge^j$  in (5.26) follows:

$$|\wedge^j| = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} (S^j 1)(t) \leq \|S^j 1\|_{V^2} \leq (C \|q_2\|_{L^2_{DU^2}} \|q_3\|_{L^2_{DU^2}})^j.$$

We apply the above estimate for the operator  $S$  iteratively to arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} \|S_{2j}\|_{V^2 \rightarrow U^2} &\lesssim \max\{\|q_2\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}, \|q_3\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}\}^{2j}, \text{ for the operator} \\ S_{2j}(f)(t) &= \int_{t_1 < \dots < t_{2j} < t} \prod_{n=1}^{2j-1} e^{\delta_n(\varphi(t_{n+1}) - \varphi(t_n))} q_{\kappa_1}(t_{2j}) \dots (q_{\kappa_{2j}} f)(t_1) dt_1 \dots dt_{2j}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\kappa_n \in \{2, 3\}$ ,  $\delta_n \in \{1, \dots, j\}$ , and hence the estimate for  $_{2j}$  in (5.26) follows.  $\square$

5.3.2. *Estimates for high order terms.* Recall (1.15), (1.16), (5.9) and (5.12):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{q} &= (|q|^2 - 1, q'), \quad E_\tau^s = \|\mathbf{q}\|_{H_\tau^{s-1}}, \quad C_\tau = 1 + \frac{1}{\tau} \|q'\|_{L^\infty_{DU^2}}, \\ Q &= \frac{1}{\tau} (|q|^2 - 1, q', \bar{q}'), \quad c_\tau = \frac{1}{\tau} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{L^2_{DU^2}} = \|Q\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}, \end{aligned}$$

and the scaling invariance property (1.18):

$$(5.27) \quad E_{\tau_0}^s = \tau_0^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \|\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}\|_{H^{s-1}}, \quad \|f\|_{L^2_{DU^2}} = \|f_{\tau_0}\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}, \quad f_\tau = \frac{1}{\tau} f\left(\frac{\cdot}{\tau}\right), \quad \tilde{\tau} := \frac{\tau}{\tau_0}.$$

We are going to give the estimates for high order terms in the expansion of  $\ln T_c^{-1}$  in Lemma 5.1:  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$ ,  $j > s$  if  $s > \frac{3}{2}$  or  $\tilde{T}_3$  and  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$ ,  $j > s$  if  $s \in (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$ , which will be used to control the energy difference  $|\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s - (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2|$  in (5.23) and (5.24). Indeed, after rescaling, the estimates in Sections 5, 6 in [31] work well here and we simply make use of them to derive the estimates. We refer the interested readers there for more detailed analysis.

**Proposition 5.1.** *Assume (5.7) and (5.8). For  $j \geq 1$ ,  $T_{2j} = \wedge^j$  and for  $j \geq 2$ ,  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$  is finite linear combination of integrals  $_{2j}$ .  $\tilde{T}_3$  is finite linear combination of cubic terms in (5.18).*

*Then there exist a constant  $C$  and a constant  $C_j$  depending on  $j \geq 2$  such that*

$$(5.28) \quad \begin{aligned} |\mathbf{1}_{j \geq 1} T_{2j}(i\sigma)| + |\mathbf{1}_{j \geq 2} \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)| &\leq (CC_\tau \|Q\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2})^{2j}, \\ |\mathbf{1}_{j \geq 2} \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)| &\leq C_j (C_\tau \|Q\|_{l_\tau^{2j} DU^2})^{2j}, \\ |\tilde{T}_3(i\sigma)| &\leq (CC_\tau \|Q\|_{l_\tau^3 DU^2})^3. \end{aligned}$$

*If we assume furthermore (with a possibly larger  $C$  depending on  $s$ )*

$$(5.29) \quad c_{\tau_0} = \frac{1}{\tau_0} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_{\tau_0}^2 DU^2} \leq \frac{1}{C},$$

*we have for non-half integer  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  that*

$$(5.30) \quad \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \tau^2 \sum_{j \geq 2s-1} \left( |T_{2j}(i\sigma)| + \mathbf{1}_{j \geq 2} |\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)| \right) d\tau \leq \frac{Cc_{\tau_0}^{2[2s]-2}}{[2s] + 1 - 2s} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2,$$

$$(5.31) \quad \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \tau^2 \sum_{s \leq j < 2s-1} |\mathbf{1}_{j \geq 2} \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)| d\tau \leq \frac{Cc_{\tau_0}^{2[s]}}{[s] + 1 - s} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2,$$

*and in particular when  $s \in (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$ , we have*

$$(5.32) \quad \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \tau^2 \left( |\tilde{T}_3(i\sigma)| + \sum_{j \geq 2} |\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)| \right) d\tau \leq \frac{Cc_{\tau_0}}{(s - \frac{1}{2})(\frac{3}{2} - s)} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2.$$

*Proof.* The estimates for  $T_{2j}(i\sigma)$ ,  $\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)$  in (5.28) follow directly from Lemma 5.4 and Lemma 5.5<sup>9</sup>. By virtue of the integrals in (5.18), we derive from Lemmas 5.4 and 5.5 that

$$\begin{aligned} |\tilde{T}_3(i\sigma)| &\lesssim C_\tau \left\| \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{\tau^2} \right\|_{l_\tau^3 DU^2}^2 \left\| \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{\tau} \right\|_{l_\tau^3 DU^2} + \left\| \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{\tau^2} \right\|_{l_\tau^3 DU^2} + \left\| \frac{q'}{\tau} \right\|_{l_\tau^3 DU^2} \sum_{h \in O} \|h\|_{l_\tau^3 DU^2}^2 \leq (CC_\tau \|Q\|_{l_\tau^3 DU^2})^3. \end{aligned}$$

If  $C_\tau \leq 2$ , by change of variables  $\tau \rightarrow \tilde{\tau} = \frac{\tau}{\tau_0}$  we bound the integral in terms of  $|T_{2j}(i\sigma)|$  in (5.30) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \tau^2 \left( |T_{2j}(i\sigma)| + \mathbf{1}_{j \geq 2} |\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)| \right) d\tau &\leq (2C)^{2j} \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \tau^2 \|Q\|_{l_\tau^{2j} DU^2}^{2j} d\tau \\ &= (2C)^{2j} \tau_0^{2s-1} \int_1^{\infty} (\tilde{\tau}^2 - 1)^{s-1} \|Q_{\tau_0}\|_{l_{\tilde{\tau}}^{2j-2} DU^2}^{2j-2} \|\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}\|_{l_{\tilde{\tau}}^2 DU^2}^2 d\tilde{\tau}, \end{aligned}$$

<sup>9</sup> If  $|T_{2j}| \leq A$  then  $|\tilde{T}_{2j}| \leq (2A)^j$ ,  $j \geq 2$ . Indeed, following the proof of Proposition 5.10 in [31], by multiplying  $q_2, q_3$  by  $\eta$ , we arrive from the expansions (3.21) and (3.22) at  $\ln(1 + \sum_{j \geq 1} \eta^{2j} T_{2j}) = \eta^2 T_2 + \sum_{j \geq 2} \eta^{2j} \tilde{T}_{2j}$ . We introduce a partial order  $\preceq$  in the set of holomorphic functions near zero, where  $g \preceq h$  means that the absolute value of each coefficient in the Taylor series of  $g$  at zero is bounded by the corresponding coefficient in the Taylor series of  $h$ . In particular,  $\ln(1 + \zeta) \preceq \frac{\zeta}{1-\zeta} := f(\zeta)$  and hence  $\sum_{j=2}^{\infty} \tilde{T}_{2j} \eta^{2j} \preceq f \circ f(A\eta) \preceq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} 2^{j-1} A^j \eta^j$ ,  $|T_{2j}| \leq A = CC_\tau c_\tau$  such that  $|\tilde{T}_{2j}| \leq (2A)^j$ ,  $j \geq 2$ .

with the equality ensured by (5.27). Proposition 5.13 in [31] implies that in the regime  $-\frac{1}{2} < s-1 \leq \frac{j-1}{2} \leq j-1$ , the above integral is bounded by

$$\frac{1}{j+1-2s}(2C)^{2j}\tau_0^{2s-1}\|\frac{1}{\tau_0}\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}\|_{i_1^2DU^2}^{2j-2}\|\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}\|_{H^{s-1}}^2 = \frac{1}{j+1-2s}(2C)^{2j}c_{\tau_0}^{2j-2}(E_{\tau_0}^s)^2,$$

with the equality ensured by (5.27).

Therefore under the smallness assumption (5.29) such that  $C_\tau \leq 1 + c_\tau \leq 1 + c_{\tau_0} \leq 2$ , (5.30) holds.

Similarly, if  $C_\tau \leq 2$ , we bound the integral in terms of  $|\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)|$  in (5.31) as

$$\int_{\tau_0}^{\infty}(\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1}\tau^2|\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)|d\tau \leq C_j2^{2j}\tau_0^{2s-1}\int_1^{\infty}(\tilde{\tau}^2 - 1)^{s-1}\|Q_{\tau_0}\|_{i_{\tilde{\tau}}^2DU^2}^{2j-2}\|\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}\|_{i_{\tilde{\tau}}^2DU^2}^2d\tilde{\tau}.$$

Proposition 6.2 in [31] and (5.27) implies (5.31).

Finally we can do the same as for  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$  above to  $\tilde{T}_3$  (with  $2j$  replaced by 3 in the above) for  $s \in (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$ . Hence (5.32) follows from (5.30) and (5.31).  $\square$

**5.4. Low order terms.** Let  $s > \frac{3}{2}$  and we aim to get the estimates for the low order terms  $\tilde{T}_3, \tilde{T}_{2j}, 2 \leq j < s$  in this section, which will be used to control the energy difference  $|\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s - (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2|$  in (5.24). Indeed, as in Section 6 [31], we have to do integration by parts to expand low order terms until  $k$ -th order,  $k = [2s] - 1$ .

We will first derive the general formula for finite expansions in Subsection 5.4.1 and then apply it to the low order terms in Subsection 5.4.2.

**5.4.1. Finite expansion.** Let us do integration by parts in the following integral:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} g(y) h(x) dx dy &= \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} e^{\int_x^y q_4} g(y) h(x) dx dy \\ &= \frac{1}{\tau} \int_{\mathbb{R}} g h dx + \frac{1}{\tau} \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} (g(y)(q_4 h)(x) - g(y)h'(x)) dx dy \\ &= \frac{1}{\tau} \int_{\mathbb{R}} g h dx + \frac{1}{\tau} \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} ((q_4 g)(y)h(x) + g'(y)h(x)) dx dy, \end{aligned}$$

which leads us to define the two operators  $D_{\pm}$ :

$$(5.33) \quad D_{\pm}(g) = (q_4 \pm \partial_x)g.$$

Then we have

**Lemma 5.6.** *For any  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , we have the following formal finite-order expansion:*

$$\int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} g(y) h(x) dx dy = \sum_{\ell=1}^k b_{\ell} + b^{\geq k+1},$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} b_{\ell} &= \frac{1}{\tau^{\ell}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (D_+^{m_{\ell}} g)(D_-^{n_{\ell}} h) dy = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( \left( \frac{D_+}{\tau} \right)^{m_{\ell}} \frac{g}{\tau} \right) \left( \left( \frac{D_-}{\tau} \right)^{n_{\ell}} h \right) dy, \quad m_{\ell} + n_{\ell} + 1 = \ell, \\ b^{\geq k+1}(z) &= \frac{1}{\tau^k} \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} (D_+^m g)(y) (D_-^n h)(x) dx dy \\ &= \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} \left( \left( \frac{D_+}{\tau} \right)^m g \right)(y) \left( \left( \frac{D_-}{\tau} \right)^n h \right)(x) dx dy, \quad m + n = k. \end{aligned}$$

In order to study the applications of the operators  $D_{\pm}$  on  $q_2, q_3$ , we make use of the structures and the preliminary estimates for  $q_2, q_3, q_4, P$  derived in Lemma 5.4. Recall  $\mathbf{q} = (|q|^2 - 1, q')$  and  $Q = \frac{1}{\tau}(|q|^2 - 1, q', \bar{q}')$ . In the following we will be flexible in the notations concerning  $Q$  in the sense that the notation  $Q \cdots Q$  will be understood as one element in the set  $\{Q^{\alpha_1} \cdots Q^{\alpha_n} \mid \alpha_{\beta} = 1, 2, 3\}$ .

Notice that  $q_2, q_3, q_4$  are, up to the multiplication by  $\frac{1}{\omega}q, \frac{1}{\omega}\bar{q}, \frac{1}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2+1}$ ,  $\omega \in [\frac{\tau}{2}, \tau)$ , linear combinations of components of  $Q$ , and the applications (perhaps several times) of the operators  $D_+, \partial_x$  or of the multiplication operators  $\mathcal{M}_{q_{\kappa}}$  on  $q_{\kappa'}$ ,  $\kappa, \kappa' = 2, 3, 4$  are, up to the multiplication by the polynomials in  $\frac{1}{\omega}q, \frac{1}{\omega}\bar{q}, \frac{1}{\omega^{-2}|q|^2+1}$ ,

applications of the derivative  $\partial_x$  on  $Q, Q', Q'', \dots$  or the multiplication of  $Q$ .

For notational simplicity, we introduce the set  $O_M$ ,  $M \geq 1$ , which concerns  $(M-1)$ -times applications of the operators  $\frac{1}{\tau}D_{\pm}$  or  $\frac{1}{\tau}\partial_x$  or  $\mathcal{M}_{\frac{1}{\tau}Q}$  on  $Q$ , as follows (noticing that  $O_1 = O$  defined in (5.11)):

$$(5.34) \quad O_M = \left\{ h_{(M,\alpha)} = P \cdot \left( \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha-1} \frac{Q^{(\ell_\gamma)}}{\tau^{1+\ell_\gamma}} \right) \frac{Q^{(\ell_\alpha)}}{\tau^{\ell_\alpha}} \mid P \text{ is any polynomial of form (5.10),} \right. \\ \left. \alpha = 1, \dots, M, \quad \ell_1 + \dots + \ell_\alpha + \alpha = M \right\}.$$

In the following  $h_{(M,\alpha)}$  will always denote an element in  $O_M$  which is homogeneous of degree  $\alpha$  in  $Q$  and sometimes we will denote simply  $h_{(M)} \in O_M$  without pointing out the precise homogeneity. Then the operators  $\frac{1}{\tau}D_{\pm}, \frac{1}{\tau}\partial_x, \mathcal{M}_{\frac{1}{\tau}Q}$  map  $O_M$  to  $O_{M+1}$  and  $\mathcal{M}_{\frac{Q^{(m)}}{\tau^{1+m}}}$  maps  $O_M$  to  $O_{M+m}$ .

We can rewrite the finite expansion in Lemma 5.6 with  $\bar{g} = h = q'$  by use of the notations  $h_{(m)} \in O_m$  as follows:

$$\frac{1}{\tau^2} \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} \bar{q}'(y) q'(x) dx dy = \sum_{\ell=1}^k a_\ell + a^{\geq k+1}, \text{ where} \\ a_\ell = \int_{\mathbb{R}} h_{(\ell+1,\alpha)} dx, \quad \alpha \geq 2, \\ a^{\geq k+1} = \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} h_{(m)}(y) h_{(n)}(x) dx dy, \quad m+n = k+2.$$

Motivated by this finite expansion formula, we derive the following estimates.

**Lemma 5.7.** *Assume the same hypothesis in Lemma 5.4. Recall  $c_\tau, C_\tau, E_\tau^s$  defined in (5.12), (1.16). Let  $O_m$  be the set defined in (5.34).*

*Then for any  $M \geq 1$ , there exists a constant  $C(M)$  such that the following holds for any  $h_{(M,\alpha)} \in O_M$  homogeneous of degree  $\alpha$ ,  $\alpha \in [1, M]$  in  $Q$ :*

$$(5.35) \quad \|h_{(M,\alpha)}\|_{L_\tau^p DU^2} \leq C(M) C_\tau \sum_{\ell_1 + \dots + \ell_\alpha = M - \alpha, \sup_{\beta} \ell_\beta \leq [M/2]}^{M-1} \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha} \left\| \frac{Q^{(\ell_\gamma)}}{\tau^{\ell_\gamma}} \right\|_{L_\tau^{p\alpha} DU^2}.$$

*Furthermore, the following estimates hold when  $k = [2s] \leq 2s$ ,  $\alpha \geq 2$ :*

$$(5.36) \quad \tau^{\ell+2} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} h_{(\ell+1,\alpha)} dx \right| \lesssim \tau_0^{\ell-2s+1} C_{\tau_0} c_{\tau_0}^{\alpha-2} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2, \quad \tau \geq \tau_0, \quad 1 \leq \ell \leq k-1,$$

$$(5.37) \quad \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \left| \tau^2 \int_{x < y} (e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} - e^{-\tau(y-x)}) h_{(m,\alpha_1)}(y) h_{(n,\alpha_2)}(x) dx dy \right| d\tau \\ \lesssim \frac{1}{|\sin(2\pi s)|} C_{\tau_0}^2 \sum_{\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 - 1}^{k-1} c_{\tau_0}^{\alpha} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2, \quad m+n = k,$$

(5.38)

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \left| \tau^2 \int_{t_1 < \dots < t_n} \prod_{i=1}^{n-1} e^{\delta_i(\varphi(t_{i+1}) - \varphi(t_i))} h_{(m_1, \alpha_1)}(t_1) \cdots h_{(m_n, \alpha_n)}(t_n) dt \right| d\tau \\ & \lesssim \frac{1}{|\sin(2\pi s)|} C_{\tau_0}^n \sum_{\alpha=\alpha_1+\dots+\alpha_n-2}^{k+n-3} c_{\tau_0}^{\alpha} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2, \quad 1 \leq \delta_i \leq n/2, \quad m_1 + \dots + m_n = k+1. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* The estimate (5.35) comes from the estimates in (4.1), (4.4) and the estimate for  $P$  in Lemma 5.4:

$$\begin{aligned} \|h_{(M, \alpha)}\|_{l_{\tau}^p DU^2} & \lesssim C_{\tau} \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha-1} \left\| \frac{Q^{(\ell_{\gamma})}}{\tau^{1+\ell_{\gamma}}} \right\|_{l_{\tau}^{\frac{p\alpha}{\alpha-1}} U^2} \left\| \frac{Q^{(\ell_{\alpha})}}{\tau^{\ell_{\alpha}}} \right\|_{l_{\tau}^{p\alpha} DU^2}, \quad \ell_1 + \dots + \ell_{\alpha} = M - \alpha \\ & \lesssim C_{\tau} \sum_{M-\alpha \leq \ell_1 + \dots + \ell_{\alpha} \leq M-1} \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha} \left\| \frac{Q^{(\ell_{\gamma})}}{\tau^{\ell_{\gamma}}} \right\|_{l_{\tau}^{p\alpha} DU^2} \quad \text{by use of (4.4)}. \end{aligned}$$

In the above, by integration by parts we can always choose  $\sup_{1 \leq \beta \leq \alpha} \ell_{\beta} \leq [M/2]$ .

We now turn to the proof of (5.36). We first bound  $\tau^{\ell+2} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} h_{(\ell+1, \alpha)} dx \right|$ ,  $\tau \geq \tau_0$ ,  $\alpha \geq 2$  by

$$\tau_0^{\ell+2-\alpha} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} P \cdot \left( \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha-1} \frac{\mathbf{q}^{(\ell_{\gamma})}}{\tau_0^{1+\ell_{\gamma}}} \right) \frac{\mathbf{q}^{(\ell_{\alpha})}}{\tau_0^{\ell_{\alpha}}} dx \right| = \tau_0^{\ell+2-\alpha} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} P\left(\frac{\cdot}{\tau_0}\right) \cdot \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha} \mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}^{(\ell_{\gamma})} dx \right|, \quad f_{\tau} = \frac{1}{\tau} f\left(\frac{\cdot}{\tau}\right),$$

for some  $\ell_1 + \dots + \ell_{\alpha} = \ell + 1 - \alpha$ . We can do as above for  $h_{(M, \alpha)}$  to derive that

$$\tau^{\ell+2} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} h_{(\ell+1, \alpha)} dx \right| \lesssim C_{\tau_0} \tau_0^{\ell+2-\alpha} \sum_{\ell+1-\alpha \leq \ell'_1 + \dots + \ell'_\alpha \leq \ell, \ell'_\beta \leq [(\ell+1)/2]} \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha} \|\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}^{(\ell'_\gamma)}\|_{l_1^{\alpha} DU^2}.$$

By the proof of Proposition 6.5 [31], the pointwise bound (5.36) holds:

$$\begin{aligned} \tau^{\ell+2} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} h_{(\ell+1, \alpha)} dx \right| & \lesssim C_{\tau_0} \tau_0^{\ell+2-\alpha} \|\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}\|_{l_1^{\alpha-2} DU^2} \|\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}\|_{H^{s-1}}^2, \quad 1 \leq \ell \leq 2s-1 \\ & \sim \tau_0^{\ell-2s+1} C_{\tau_0} c_{\tau_0}^{\alpha-2} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2, \quad \text{by the scaling property (5.27)}. \end{aligned}$$

We now consider the following integral

$$\tau^2 \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} h_{(m)}(y) h_{(n)}(x) dx dy, \quad m+n = k+1,$$

which, by the estimate for  $\wedge$  in Lemma 5.5 and Lemma 5.7, is bounded by

$$\tau^2 C_{\tau}^2 \sum_{\alpha=2}^{k+1} \sum_{\ell_1+\dots+\ell_{\alpha}=k+1-\alpha}^{k-1} \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha} \left\| \frac{Q^{(\ell_{\gamma})}}{\tau^{\ell_{\gamma}}} \right\|_{l_{\tau}^{\alpha} DU^2}.$$

Therefore, exactly as in the proof of Proposition 5.1, we do change of variable  $\tau \rightarrow \tilde{\tau} = \frac{\tau}{\tau_0}$  and make use of the scaling property (5.27), such that

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} \left| \tau^2 \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} h_{(m)}(y) h_{(n)}(x) dx dy \right| d\tau \lesssim \tau_0^{2s-1} \int_1^{\infty} (\tilde{\tau}^2 - 1)^{s-1} \\ & \cdot C_{\tau_0}^2 \sum_{\alpha=2}^{k+1} \sum_{\ell_1+\dots+\ell_{\alpha}=k+1-\alpha, \ell_{\beta} \leq [k/2]}^{k-1} \left( \prod_{\gamma=1}^{\alpha-2} \left\| \frac{Q_{\tau_0}^{(\ell_{\gamma})}}{\tilde{\tau}^{\ell_{\gamma}}} \right\|_{l_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\alpha} DU^2} \right) \left\| \frac{\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}^{(\ell_{\alpha-1})}}{\tilde{\tau}^{\ell_{\alpha-1}}} \right\|_{l_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\alpha} DU^2} \left\| \frac{\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}^{(\ell_{\alpha})}}{\tilde{\tau}^{\ell_{\alpha}}} \right\|_{l_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\alpha} DU^2} d\tilde{\tau}, \end{aligned}$$

which, by Propositions 6.4 and 6.5 in [31], is bounded by

$$\frac{\tau_0^{2s-1} C_{\tau_0}^2}{|\sin(2\pi s)|} \sum_{\alpha=2}^{k+1} \left\| \frac{1}{\tau_0} \mathbf{q}_{\tau_0} \right\|_{l_1^{\alpha-2} DU^2} \|\mathbf{q}_{\tau_0}\|_{H^{s-1}}^2 = \frac{C_{\tau_0}^2 \sum_{\alpha=0}^k c_{\tau_0}^{\alpha} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2}{2s - [2s]}, \quad \text{if } \frac{k}{2} < s < \frac{k+1}{2}.$$



Similarly, by use of the estimates for  $_{,2j}$  in Lemma 5.5 and Lemma 5.7 we derive the estimates (5.37) and (5.38) respectively.  $\square$

5.4.2. *Estimates for low order terms  $\tilde{T}_3, \tilde{T}_{2j}$ .* In this section we are going to do finite expansions in Lemma 5.6 to the low order terms  $\tilde{T}_3, \tilde{T}_{2j}$ ,  $2 \leq j < s$ ,  $s > \frac{3}{2}$ , keeping in mind the estimates in Lemma 5.7.

**Proposition 5.2.** *Assume (5.7) and (5.8) and let  $s > \frac{3}{2}$  be away from half integers such that  $k := [2s] \geq 3$ . Then*

- we can expand  $\tau^2 \tilde{T}_3(i\sigma)$  until  $k$ th-order:

$$(5.39) \quad \begin{aligned} \tau^2 \tilde{T}_3(i\sigma) &= \sum_{\ell=3}^k \mathcal{H}_3^\ell \tau^{-\ell+1} + \mathcal{H}_3^{>k}(i\sigma), \quad \mathcal{H}_3^\ell \text{ independent of } \tau, \quad \sigma \rightarrow \infty, \\ \text{such that } \tau_0^{2s-\ell} |\mathcal{H}_3^\ell| &\leq CC_{\tau_0} \sum_{\alpha=1}^{k-2} c_{\tau_0}^\alpha (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2, \\ \text{and } \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} |\mathcal{H}_3^{>k}(i\sigma)| d\tau &\leq \frac{CC_{\tau_0}^3 \sum_{\alpha=1}^{k-1} c_{\tau_0}^\alpha}{|\sin(2\pi s)|} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2; \end{aligned}$$

- for  $2 \leq j < s$ , we can expand  $\tau^2 \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)$  until  $k$ th-order:

$$(5.40) \quad \begin{aligned} \tau^2 \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma) &= \sum_{\ell=2j}^k \mathcal{H}_{2j}^\ell \tau^{-\ell+1} + \mathcal{H}_{2j}^{>k}(i\sigma), \quad \mathcal{H}_{2j}^\ell \text{ independent of } \tau, \text{ as } \sigma \rightarrow \infty, \\ \text{such that } \tau_0^{2s-\ell} |\mathcal{H}_{2j}^\ell| &\leq CC_{\tau_0} \sum_{\alpha=2j-2}^{k-2} c_{\tau_0}^\alpha (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2, \\ \text{and } \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} |\mathcal{H}_{2j}^{>k}(i\sigma)| d\tau &\leq \frac{CC_{\tau_0}^{2j} \sum_{\alpha=2j-2}^{k-1} c_{\tau_0}^\alpha}{|\sin(2\pi s)|} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* We will follow exactly the procedure in Section 6 [31] and hence be sketchy.

Recall that  $\tilde{T}_3$  is linear combinations of integrals of type in (5.18). We do integration by parts as in Lemma 5.6 to the integrals in (5.18) from the left and right sides alternatively to expand  $\tau^2 \tilde{T}_3(i\sigma)$  until  $(k-1)$ th-order: We do integration by parts  $(k-1)$ -times to the integral while  $(k-2)$ -times to the last two integrals in (5.18), and we also notice the expansion  $\text{Im } \zeta = \omega = \tau + O(\tau^{-1})$  as  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ , to arrive at the expansion in (5.39).

Here,  $\mathcal{H}_3^\ell$ ,  $3 \leq \ell \leq k$  is the leading order (in terms of  $\tau^{-1}$ ) of a linear combination of integrals of the following forms with bounded coefficients:

$$\begin{aligned} \tau^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( (D_+^{m_\ell} q_2)(D_-^{n_\ell} q_3) - (\partial_x^{m_\ell} q_2)((-\partial_x)^{n_\ell} q_3) \right) dx, \quad m_\ell + n_\ell \leq \ell - 2, \\ \tau^3 \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( \frac{(|q|^2 - 1) \text{ or } q' \text{ or } \bar{q}'}{\tau^2} h_1 \right)^{(m_\ell-1)} h_2^{(n_\ell)} dx, \quad h_1, h_2 \in O \text{ defined in (5.11)}. \end{aligned}$$

Then  $\mathcal{H}_3^\ell$  is linear combination of integrals of type  $\tau^{m+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}} h_{(m,\alpha)} dx$ ,  $3 \leq m \leq \ell$  with  $h_{(m,\alpha)} \in O_m$  homogeneous of degree  $\alpha \geq 3$  in  $Q$ . Hence the estimate for  $\mathcal{H}_3^\ell$  in (5.39) follows from (5.36) in Lemma 5.7.

Here  $\mathcal{H}_3^{>k}$  is linear combination of integrals such as  $\tau \int_{\mathbb{R}} h_{(k,\alpha)} dx$ ,  $\alpha \geq 3$  (which appears still because of the expansion of  $\omega$  in terms of  $\tau$ ) and the following integrals with bounded

coefficients,  $m + n = k - 1$ ,  $m_1 + m_2 + m_3 = k + 1$  and  $h_{(m)}, h_{(m,\alpha)} \in O_m$ :

$$\begin{aligned} & \tau^2 \int_{x < y} \left( (e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} - e^{-\tau(y-x)}) \left( \frac{1}{\tau^m} D_+^m q_2 \right)(y) \left( \frac{1}{\tau^n} D_-^n q_3 \right)(x) \right) dx dy, \\ & \tau^2 \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} \left( \left( \frac{1}{\tau^m} D_+^m q_2 \right)(y) \left( \frac{1}{\tau^n} D_-^n q_3 \right)(x) - \left( \frac{1}{\tau^m} \partial_y^m q_2 \right)(y) \left( \frac{1}{\tau^n} (-\partial_x)^n q_3 \right)(x) \right) dx dy, \\ & \tau^2 \int_{x < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} h_{(m+1, \alpha_m)}(y) h_{(n+1, \alpha_n)}(x) dx dy, \quad \alpha_m + \alpha_n \geq 3, \\ & \tau^2 \int_{x < t < y} e^{-\tau(y-x)} h_{(m_1)}(y) h_{(m_2)}(t) h_{(m_3)}(x) dx dt dy. \end{aligned}$$

The estimate for  $\mathcal{H}_3^{>k}$  in (5.39) then follows from Lemma 5.7.

Similarly, since  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$  is a linear combination of integrals  ${}_{2j}$  reading as (5.14), (5.40) follows from Lemmas 5.6 and 5.7.  $\square$

**5.5. The energies.** We restrict ourselves on the imaginary axis (5.7):  $(\lambda, z) = (i\sigma, i\tau/2) \in \mathcal{R}$ . For any  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$ , by (1.21), there exists  $\tau_0 \geq C$  such that the smallness assumption (5.5):  $c_{\tau_0} = \frac{1}{\tau_0} \|\mathbf{q}\|_{l_2^2 D U^2} < \frac{1}{2C}$  holds. Consequently the condition (5.8):  $\|q\|^2 - 1 \leq \frac{1}{64} \tau_0^2$  holds if  $\tau_0, C$  above have been chosen large enough. Indeed, by view of (4.7) such that  $\|q\|_{L^\infty} \lesssim 1 + \tau_0 c_{\tau_0}^{1/2} + \tau_0 c_{\tau_0}$ , (5.8) follows from (5.5) for large  $C$  and  $\tau_0$ . From now on we fix  $\tau_0$ .

**5.5.1. The expansion of  $G(i\tau/2)$ .** Let us first consider rigorously the expansion of the real part of the expansion of  $\ln T_c^{-1}(i\sigma)$  in Lemma 5.1:

$$(5.41) \quad \begin{aligned} \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \ln T_c^{-1})|_{\lambda=i\sigma} &= \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_2)|_{\lambda=i\sigma} + \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_f)|_{\lambda=i\sigma} \\ &+ \sum_{j>s} \mathbf{1}_{j \geq 2} \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_{2j})|_{\lambda=i\sigma}, \quad \tilde{T}_f := \tilde{T}_3 + \sum_{j=2}^{[s]} \tilde{T}_{2j}. \end{aligned}$$

Recall the expansion for  $\operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_2)|_{\lambda=i\sigma}$  in (5.22) with  $N = [s - 1]$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_2)(i\sigma) &= \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l \mathcal{H}_2^{2l+2} \tau^{-2l-1} + \mathcal{H}_2^{>2N+2}(i\sigma), \quad \text{as } \tau \rightarrow \infty, \\ &\text{with } \tau_0^{2(s-1-l)} \mathcal{H}_2^{2l+2} \leq (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2, \quad \mathcal{H}_2^{>2N+2}(i\sigma) = o(\tau^{1-2s}). \end{aligned}$$

If  $s > \frac{3}{2}$  is away from half integers, then by Proposition 5.1 and Proposition 5.2 with  $k = [2s]$  under the smallness assumption (5.5),

- We can expand  $\tilde{T}_f = \tilde{T}_3 + \sum_{j=2}^{[s]} \tilde{T}_{2j}$  as

$$(5.42) \quad \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_f)(i\sigma) = \sum_{\ell=3}^k \mathcal{H}_f^\ell \tau^{-\ell+1} + \mathcal{H}_f^{>k}(i\sigma) \text{ as } \sigma \rightarrow \infty.$$

Here  $\mathcal{H}_f^\ell = -\operatorname{Re}(\mathcal{H}_3^\ell + \sum_{j=2}^{[s]} \mathcal{H}_{2j}^\ell)$  with  $\mathcal{H}_f^{2l+1} = 0$  and  $\tau_0^{2(s-1-l)} |\mathcal{H}_f^{2l+2}| \leq C c_{\tau_0} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2$ , and  $|\mathcal{H}_f^{>k}(i\sigma)| \leq |\mathcal{H}_3^{>k}(i\sigma)| + \sum_{j=2}^{[s]} |\mathcal{H}_{2j}^{>k}(i\sigma)| = o(\tau^{1-2s})$ ;

- $\sum_{j>s} |4z^2 \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\sigma)| = o(\tau^{1-2s})$ .

To conclude, noticing that  $k \geq 2N + 2$  and  $k > 2N + 2$  only if  $k \in 2\mathbb{Z} + 1$ , by (5.41) and (5.42) above, we have the following expansion for  $G(i\frac{\tau}{2}) = \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \ln T_c^{-1})(i\sigma)$  when  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  away from half integers:

$$(5.43) \quad G(i\frac{\tau}{2}) = \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \ln T_c^{-1})(i\sigma) = \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l \mathcal{H}^{2l+2} \tau^{-2l-1} + \mathcal{H}^{>2N+2}(i\frac{\tau}{2}), \quad \text{as } \tau \rightarrow \infty,$$

where (noticing that  $\mathcal{H}^k = 0$  if  $k > 2N + 2$  such that  $k \in 2\mathbb{Z} + 1$ )<sup>10</sup>

$$(5.45) \quad \begin{aligned} \mathcal{H}^{2l+1} &= \mathcal{H}_2^{2l+1} + (-1)^l \mathcal{H}_f^{2l+1} \text{ with } |\tau_0^{2(s-1-l)} \mathcal{H}^{2l+1}| \leq C(E_{\tau_0}^s)^2, \\ \mathcal{H}^{>2N+1}(i\frac{\tau}{2}) &= \mathcal{H}_2^{>2N+1} + \mathcal{H}_f^{>k} + \sum_{j>s} \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_{2j})(i\sigma) = o(\tau^{1-2s}). \end{aligned}$$

By Proposition 5.2 and the above expansion (5.43) for the non negative superharmonic function  $G$  on the upper half plane, the trace of  $G$  on the real line exists as a finite Radon measure  $\mu$  such that the measure  $(1 + \xi^2)^N \mu$  is finite. Furthermore, by view of  $G = \operatorname{Re}(z^2 \ln \frac{1}{z-z_m}) +$  harmonic function in a small enough neighborhood of  $z_m$  (with  $\lambda_m$  the zeros of  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$ ),  $\mathcal{H}^{2l+1}$  indeed reads as in (5.2).

5.5.2. *The energies.* If  $s \in (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$ , by view of the difference (5.23) for  $|\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s - (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2|$ , under the smallness condition (5.5), we derive the equivalence relation (5.6) from Proposition 5.1.

Similarly for  $s \geq \frac{3}{2}$ , by the above finite expansion (5.43) for  $G(i\tau/2)$  and Propositions 5.1 and 5.2, we also have the inequality (5.6) since we derive from (5.24) that

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s - (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2| &\leq \sum_{l=0}^N \tau_0^{2(s-1-l)} \binom{s-1}{l} |\mathcal{H}_f^{2l+2}| \\ &+ \left| \frac{2}{\pi} \sin(\pi(s-1)) \int_{\tau_0}^{\infty} (\tau^2 - \tau_0^2)^{s-1} (\mathcal{H}_f^{>k} + \sum_{j>s} \operatorname{Re}(4z^2 \tilde{T}_{2j})(i\sigma)) d\tau \right| \leq C_{c_{\tau_0}} (E_{\tau_0}^s)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Here we noticed that for the estimates in Propositions 5.1 and 5.2, if  $s = m$  is an integer then the singularity  $(2s - [2s])^{-1}$  is compensated by the coefficient  $\sin(\pi(s-1))$ , while if  $s = m + \frac{1}{2}$  we can do the frequency decomposition as in (5.44). Therefore for any  $q \in X^s$ ,  $s > \frac{1}{2}$  there exists  $\tau_0 \geq C \geq 2$  such that the energy  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau_0}^s$  is well-defined in (5.3) satisfying (5.6).

Furthermore we derive the trace formula (5.4) by Proposition 5.2. For general  $\tau' \geq 2$ , we can still define our energy  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau'}^s$ , as in (5.3) since  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathcal{R} = \{(\lambda, z) \mid \lambda^2 = z^2 + 1, \lambda \notin \mathcal{I}_{\text{cut}}, \operatorname{Im} z > 0\}$  and  $G(i\frac{\tau}{2})$  is integrable on the finite interval  $\tau \in [\tau', \tau_0]$  if  $\tau' \leq \tau_0$ . The analyticity of  $\mathcal{E}_{\tau'}^s(q)$  in  $q \in X^s$  follows from the analyticity of the renormalised transmission coefficient  $T_c^{-1}(\lambda; q)$  in Theorem 3.1.

## 6. THE METRIC SPACE

In this section we study the metric space  $X^s$  defined in (1.4):

$$X^s = \{q \in H_{\text{loc}}^s(\mathbb{R}) : |q|^2 - 1 \in H^{s-1}(\mathbb{R}), \quad q' \in H^{s-1}(\mathbb{R})\} / \mathbb{S}^1, \quad s \geq 0,$$

and its endowed metric defined in (1.5):

$$d^s(q, p) = \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \|\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)(\lambda q - p)\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R})}^2 dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

<sup>10</sup>If  $s = m$  an integer then (5.45) follows from the proof of Proposition 5.2; if  $s = m + \frac{1}{2}$ , then we can replace  $\mathcal{H}_f^k(i\sigma)$  in  $\mathcal{H}^{>2N+2}(i\tau/2)$  by (noticing  $\mathcal{H}_f^{>k} = \mathcal{H}_f^{>k-1}$ ,  $\mathcal{H}_f^k = 0$  when  $k \in 2\mathbb{Z} + 1$ )

$$(5.44) \quad \left( (\mathcal{H}_f^{>k})(i\sigma; Q) - (\mathcal{H}_f^{>k})(i\sigma; Q_{<\tau}) \right) + (\mathcal{H}_f^{>k-1}(i\sigma; Q_{<\tau}))$$

such that  $\mathcal{H}^{>2N+2}(i\tau/2) = o(\tau^{1-2s})$  holds: Here  $Q_{<\tau} = \frac{1}{\tau}(|q|^2 - 1)_{<\tau}, q'_{<\tau}, \bar{q}'_{<\tau}$  denotes the low frequency part of  $Q = \frac{1}{\tau}(|q|^2 - 1, q', \bar{q}')$  and hence there exists at least one high frequency  $Q_{\geq\tau}$  in the first part of the decomposition (5.44) while there is only low frequency part  $Q_{<\tau}$  in the second part of (5.44), from which we derive  $\mathcal{H}^{>2N+2}(i\tau/2) = o(\tau^{1-2s})$  from the proof of Proposition 5.2 (see also Section 6 [31]).

Recall the energy  $E^s(q)$  associated to  $q \in X^s$  given by (1.17) and (1.14):

$$E^s(q) = \left( \|q'\|_{H_2^{s-1}(\mathbb{R})}^2 + \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H_2^{s-1}(\mathbb{R})}^2 \right)^{1/2}.$$

This section is devoted to the proof of Theorem 1.1 and will be divided into two subsections, with the first subsection devoted to the study of the metric structure (see Theorem 6.1 below), and the second one to the analytic structure (see Theorem 6.2 below).

**6.1. The metric structure.** We study in this subsection the metric structure of the metric space  $(X^s, d^s)$ .

**Theorem 6.1.** *Suppose that  $s \geq 0$ . Then  $(X^s, d^s)$  is a separable complete metric space. Moreover, there exists a constant  $c$  depending on  $\Lambda > 0$  such that for any  $q, p \in X^s$  with  $E^s(q), E^s(p) \leq \Lambda$ ,*

$$|E^s(q) - E^s(p)| \leq cd^s(q, p).$$

*$1 + C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R})$  is a dense subset. Every metric ball is contractible. If  $s > 0$  then every closed metric ball is weakly sequentially compact.*

By weakly sequentially compact we mean that if  $(q_j)$  is a sequence in  $B = \overline{B_r^s(q)}$  with  $B_r^s(q) = \{p \in X^s \mid d^s(p, q) < r\}$ , then there is a subsequence and  $p \in B$  so that  $q_{j_k} \rightarrow p$  and  $|q_{j_k}|^2 - 1 \rightarrow |p|^2 - 1$  as distributions. If  $s > 0$  then the boundedness and the convergence  $q_{j_k} \rightarrow p$  as a distribution imply that  $q_{j_k} \rightarrow p$  in  $L^2(K)$  for every compact interval  $K$  and hence  $|q_{j_k}|^2 - 1 \rightarrow |p|^2 - 1$  in  $L^1(K)$  for every compact interval  $K$ , and hence as distribution. Thus only the convergence of  $q_{j,k} \rightarrow p$  as a distribution and the weakly compactness of closed balls has to be proven.

Before proving Theorem 6.1, we claim the following lemma stating the relation between the energy and the metric, whose proof is postponed to the end of this subsection.

**Lemma 6.1.** *If  $q \in X^s$  then with an absolute constant  $c$  we have*

$$(6.1) \quad d^s(1, q) \leq cE^s(q).$$

*If  $p \in X^s$  and  $q \in H_{loc}^s$  so that  $d^s(p, q) < \infty$ , then  $q \in X^s$  and*

$$(6.2) \quad E^s(q) \leq E^s(p) + c(1 + E^s(p))^{\frac{1}{2}}d^s(p, q) + c(d^s(p, q))^2.$$

*Proof of Theorem 6.1.* We organize the proof into a series of steps. The cutoff functions  $\eta$  and  $\rho$  will be chosen appropriately in each step and may vary from step to step.

**Step 1.** Suppose that  $q, p \in X^s$  with  $E^s(q), E^s(p) < \infty$ . Then  $d^s(q, p) = 0$  iff there exists  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  with  $|\lambda| = 1$  such that  $p = \lambda q$ . Since  $p = \lambda q$  implies  $d^s(q, p) = 0$  trivially, we assume that  $d^s(q, p) = 0$ . Then as  $\|\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)f\|_{H^s} \geq C(y, a, b)\|f\|_{H^s(I)}$  for any  $y \in \mathbb{R}$  and any interval  $I = [a, b]$ , there exists  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  with  $|\lambda| = 1$  so that

$$\|\lambda q - p\|_{H^s(I)} = 0.$$

Hence  $p = \lambda q$ .

**Step 2. Triangle inequality.** If  $q, p, r \in H_{loc}^s$  with  $d^s(q, p) < \infty$  and  $d^s(p, r) < \infty$ , then we simply integrate the square of the following triangle inequality

$$\inf_{|\mu|=1} \|\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)(q - \mu r)\|_{H^s} \leq \inf_{|\lambda_1|=1} \|\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)(q - \lambda_1 p)\|_{H^s} + \inf_{|\lambda_2|=1} \|\operatorname{sech}(\cdot - y)(p - \lambda_2 r)\|_{H^s},$$

to derive the triangle inequality

$$d^s(q, r) \leq d^s(q, p) + d^s(p, r).$$

**Step 3.  $(X^s, d^s)$  is a metric space.**

We deduce from the triangle inequality in Step 2 and (6.1) that whenever  $p, q \in X^s$  then  $d^s(p, q) < \infty$  and  $(X^s, d^s)$  is a metric space.

**Step 4.  $(X^s, d^s)$  is a complete metric space.**

Let  $(q_n)$  be representatives of a Cauchy sequence in  $(X^s, d^s)$  and let  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ . There exists  $q \in H_{\text{loc}}^s$  and a sequence  $(\lambda_n(y))$  with  $|\lambda_n(y)| = 1$  such that

$$\text{sech}(\cdot - y)\lambda_n(y)q_n \rightarrow \text{sech}(\cdot - y)q \quad \text{in } H^s.$$

Clearly  $q$  does not depend on  $y$ . This implies pointwise convergence of the integrand with respect to  $y$  in the definition of the distance function and

$$d^s(q_n, q) \leq \sup_{m \geq n} d^s(q_n, q_m) \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{with } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Lemma 6.1 implies  $q \in X^s$ .

**Step 5. A dense subset.**

We claim that  $1 + C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \subset X^s$  is dense. Let  $q$  satisfy  $E^s(q) < \infty$ . We fix a monoton function  $\eta \in C^\infty$  with  $\eta(x) = 1$  for  $x > \frac{1}{2}$  and  $\eta(x) = 0$  for  $x \leq -\frac{1}{2}$ . Since

$$\|(1 - \eta(R \pm x))(|u|^2 - 1)\|_{H^{s-1}} + \|(1 - \eta(R \pm x))u_x\|_{H^{s-1}} \rightarrow 0$$

as  $R \rightarrow \infty$ , given  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists  $R_0$  so that all these quantities above are at most of size  $\varepsilon$  for  $R > R_0$ .

Let  $\hat{u}_\pm = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta'(x \mp R)u \, dx$  with  $R > R_0$ . We claim that there exists an absolute constant  $c$  such that

$$\|\hat{u}_\pm - 1\| \leq c\varepsilon.$$

This estimate follows from Lemma 6.3 below. Multiplying by a complex constant of modulus 1 we may assume that  $\hat{u}_- \in [\frac{1}{2}, 2]$ . We choose  $\omega \in [-\pi, \pi]$  so that  $\hat{u}_+ = e^{i\omega}|\hat{u}_+|$ . We define

$$u_R = \eta(R - x)\eta(R + x)u(x) + (1 - \eta(R - x))e^{i\omega(\ln(3)/\ln(2+|x/R|^2))} + (1 - \eta(R + x)).$$

It is not hard to see that

$$\lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} d^s(u_R, u) = 0.$$

Clearly  $u_R - 1$  vanishes for  $x < -2R$  and it decays as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ . After convolving  $u_R - 1$  with a Dirac sequence we may assume that (without changing the notation) that in addition  $u_R \in C^\infty$ . By a standard cutoff argument we may assume  $u_R - 1 \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ .

**Step 6. Weak compactness.**

Let  $s \geq 0$ ,  $q \in X^s$ ,  $r < \infty$  and  $q_n \in X^s$  so that  $d^s(q, q_n) \leq r$ . We claim that there exists a weakly convergent subsequence with a limit  $p$  in the same closed ball. This follows by an easy modification of Step 5. Lemma 6.1 implies that the weak limit is in  $X^s$ . If  $s > 0$  we obtain

$$(6.3) \quad E^s(p) \leq \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} E^s(q_n).$$

Indeed, if  $q_n$  converges weakly to  $p$  then up to choosing  $\lambda_n$

$$\eta(|q_n|^2 - 1) \rightarrow \eta(|p|^2 - 1)$$

in  $H^{s-1}$  by compactness. We easily deduce (6.3).  $\square$

In the remainder of this subsection we will give two technical lemmas (Lemma 6.2 and Lemma 6.3) and their proofs, as well as the proof of Lemma 6.1.

**Lemma 6.2.** *Let  $0 < \delta < \frac{1}{4}$  and suppose that  $\eta^{(k)} \leq C\eta$  for all  $k \geq 0$ ,  $|\eta'| \leq \delta\eta$ . Let  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ , then*

$$\|\eta \langle D \rangle^s f\|_{L^2} \leq c \|\langle D \rangle^s (\eta f)\|_{L^2},$$

where the operator  $\langle D \rangle^s$  is defined by the Fourier multiplier  $\langle \xi \rangle^s = (1 + |\xi|^2)^{s/2}$ .

*Proof.* The operator  $\langle D \rangle^s$  is defined by convolution with (up to a multiplication by a power of  $2\pi$ )

$$g(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{i\xi x} \langle \xi \rangle^s d\xi,$$

which is understood as inverse Fourier transform *resp.* as oscillatory integral if  $x \neq 0$ . To be more specific, let us assume  $x > 0$ . Then we move the contour of the integration to  $\{\xi + i\tau \mid \xi \in \mathbb{R}, -1 < \tau < 1\}$  in the complex space:

$$g(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{i(\xi+i\tau)x} (1 + (\xi + i\tau)^2)^{s/2} d\xi = e^{-\tau x} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{i\xi x} (\xi^2 + 2i\tau\xi + 1 - \tau^2)^{s/2} d\xi.$$

We take  $\tau = 1$ . We take the smooth cutoff function  $\rho$  with  $\rho = 1$  around 0 to decompose the integration into the part close to 0 and the part away from 0:

$$e^x g(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{i\xi x} \xi^{s/2} [\rho(\xi + 2i)^{s/2}] d\xi + \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{i\xi x} \xi^s [(1 - \rho)(1 + 2i/\xi)^{s/2}] d\xi.$$

Similarly for  $x < 0$  we take  $\tau = -1$ . Then by the theory of oscillatory integrals,

$$|g(x)| \leq C e^{-|x|} \left( (1 + |x|)^{-1-s/2} + (1 + \chi_{\{|x| \leq 1\}} |x|^{-1-s}) \right),$$

and the exponential decay holds:

$$|\partial_x^k g(x)| \leq C e^{-|x|} (1 + |x|^{-1-s/2}), \quad \forall |x| \geq 1.$$

We denote  $g = g^s$  to emphasize the dependence of the above function  $g(x)$  on  $s$  and we decompose  $g^s(x)$  into

$$g^s(x) = g_1^s(x) + g_2^s(x), \quad g_1^s(x) = \rho(x)g^s(x),$$

such that

$$(6.4) \quad \begin{aligned} |g_1^s| &\leq C \chi_{\{|x| \leq 1\}} (1 + |x|^{-1-s}), \\ |\partial_x^k g_2^s(x)| &\leq C_k e^{-\frac{|x|}{2}}, \text{ and hence } \|g_2^s * f\|_{H^N} \leq C_N \|f\|_{-N}, \quad \forall N \in \mathbb{N}. \end{aligned}$$

The claimed inequality is equivalent to

$$\|\eta \langle D \rangle^s \eta^{-1} \langle D \rangle^{-s} f\|_{L^2} \leq c \|f\|_{L^2}, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \|\eta g^s * (\eta^{-1} g^{-s} * f)\|_{L^2} \leq c \|f\|_{L^2},$$

and by duality it suffices to consider the case  $s \geq 0$ . We do the above decomposition for  $g^s$  and it remains to show

$$\|\eta g_j^s * (\eta^{-1} g_l^{-s} * f)\|_{L^2} \leq c \|f\|_{L^2}, \quad j, l = 1, 2.$$

When  $j = l = 2$ , then the integral kernel of the operator on the LHS reads as

$$k_2^s(x, y) = \eta(x) \int_{\mathbb{R}} g_2^s(x - z) \eta^{-1}(z) g_2^{-s}(z - y) dz.$$

By  $|\partial_x^k \eta(x)| \leq c_k e^{\delta|x-z|} \eta(z)$ , the estimate follows from (6.4):

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}|x-z|} e^{\delta|x-z|} e^{-\frac{1}{2}|z-y|} dz \leq C e^{-\frac{1}{4}|x-y|}.$$

It is also straightforward to check the other cases by use of (6.4):

$$\begin{aligned} \|\eta g_1^s * (\eta^{-1} g_2^{-s} * f)\|_{L^2} &\leq c \|g_2^{-s} * f\|_{H^s} \leq c \|f\|_{L^2}, \\ \|\eta g_2^s * (\eta^{-1} g_1^{-s} * f)\|_{L^2} &\leq c \|g_1^{-s} * f\|_{H^s} \leq c \|f\|_{L^2}, \\ \|\eta g_1^s * (\eta^{-1} g_1^{-s} * f)\|_{L^2} &\leq c \|g_1^{-s} * f\|_{H^s} \leq c \|f\|_{L^2}. \end{aligned}$$

□

We turn to another technical lemma. Let  $\eta(x) = (1 + x^2)^{-1}$ . Then

$$(6.5) \quad \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x - y) (|q|^2 - 1)(x) dx \right| \leq C \|\eta(\cdot - y) \langle D \rangle^{-1} (|q|^2 - 1)\|_{L^2},$$

since

$$\eta^{-1}(\cdot - y) \operatorname{sech}^2(\cdot - y) \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}) \subset H^1(\mathbb{R}).$$

**Lemma 6.3.** *Let  $\eta_0$  be a nonnegative Schwartz function. Then*

$$(6.6) \quad \int_{\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}} \eta_0(x)\eta_0(y)|q(x) - q(y)|^2 dx dy \leq c\|\eta\langle D \rangle^{-1}q_x\|_{L^2}^2,$$

and with  $\kappa = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x) dx$ ,

$$(6.7) \quad \left| \left| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) dx \right| - 1 \right| \leq c \left( \|\eta(\cdot - y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}q_x\|_{L^2} + \|\eta(\cdot - y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}(|q|^2 - 1)\|_{L^2} \right).$$

*Proof.* Straightforward calculation yields

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}} \eta_0(x)\eta_0(y)|q(x) - q(y)|^2 dx dy &= 2\operatorname{Re} \int_{x < y} \eta_0(x)\eta_0(y) \int_{x < z_1, z_2 < y} q'(z_1)\bar{q}'(z_2) dz_1 dz_2 dx dy \\ &= 2\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}} \int_{-\infty}^{\min\{z_1, z_2\}} \eta_0(x) dx \int_{\max\{z_1, z_2\}}^{\infty} \eta_0(y) dy q'(z_1)\bar{q}'(z_2) dz_1 dz_2. \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\rho(z_1, z_2) = 2 \int_{-\infty}^{\min\{z_1, z_2\}} \eta_0(x) dx \int_{\max\{z_1, z_2\}}^{\infty} \eta_0(y) dy.$$

The assertion (6.6) follows once we prove with  $\kappa_0 = 2 \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta_0$ ,

$$\|\rho(\cdot, \cdot)\|_{L^2} + \|\partial_{z_1}\rho\|_{L^2} + \|\partial_{z_2}\rho\|_{L^2} + \|\partial_{z_1 z_2}^2 \rho - \kappa_0 \delta_{z_1 - z_2} \eta_0(z_1)\|_{L^2} \leq c.$$

Indeed,

$$\partial_{z_1}\rho(z_1, z_2) = \begin{cases} 2\eta_0(z_1) \int_{z_2}^{\infty} \eta_0(y) dy & \text{if } z_1 < z_2 \\ -2 \int_{-\infty}^{z_2} \eta_0(x) dx \eta_0(z_1) & \text{if } z_2 < z_1 \end{cases}$$

and

$$\partial_{z_1 z_2}^2 \rho(z_1, z_2) = -2\eta_0(z_1)\eta_0(z_2) \text{ if } z_1 \neq z_2.$$

At the diagonal  $\{(z_1, z_2) \mid z_1 = z_2\}$  we have

$$\partial_{z_1}\rho(z, z_+) - \partial_{z_1}\rho(z, z_-) = 2\eta_0(z) \int_{z_+}^{\infty} \eta_0 + 2\eta_0(z) \int_{-\infty}^{z_-} \eta_0 = 2\eta_0(z) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta_0$$

and hence

$$\partial_{z_1 z_2}^2 \rho(z_1, z_2) = -2\eta_0(z_1)\eta_0(z_2) + 2\delta_{z_1 - z_2} \eta_0(z_1) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta_0.$$

We turn to the proof of (6.7). Let  $\kappa = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x) dx$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) dx \right| &\leq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)|q(x)| dx \\ &\leq \kappa^{1/2} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)|q|^2(x) dx \right)^{1/2} \\ &\leq \kappa \left( 1 + \kappa^{-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) dx \right) \\ &\leq \kappa + C\|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}(|q|^2 - 1)\|_{L^2}^{1/2}, \end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we used (6.5). This implies the desired estimate (6.7) if for some  $\varepsilon > 0$ ,  $\left| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) dx \right| \geq 1 + \varepsilon$ .

We hence fix  $\varepsilon$  ( $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{2}$  being legitimate) and consider the case

$$(6.8) \quad \left| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) dx \right| \leq (1 + \varepsilon).$$

Using Fubini and (6.6) we have

$$\begin{aligned}
(6.9) \quad & \left\| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q \, dx - q \right\|_{L^2(\operatorname{sech}^2(\cdot-y))}^2 \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x'-y) \left| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) \, dx - q(x') \right|^2 dx' \\
&\leq \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}^2} \operatorname{sech}^2(x'-y) \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y) |q(x) - q(x')|^2 dx \, dx' \\
&\leq c \|\eta(\cdot-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1} q_x\|_{L^2}^2,
\end{aligned}$$

and hence by triangle inequality,

$$\begin{aligned}
& \left| \left| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) \, dx \right|^2 - 1 \right| \leq \left| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) \, dx \right| \\
& \quad + \left| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)|q|^2(x) \, dx - \left| \frac{1}{\kappa} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) \, dx \right|^2 \right|,
\end{aligned}$$

where the last term is estimated using (6.9) and by writing it as  $|A^2 - B^2| = |A+B||A-B|$ . In this last step we made use of (6.8).  $\square$

We complete this subsection with verifying the relation between metric and energy stated in Lemma 6.1.

*Proof of Lemma 6.1.* We claim that there exists a constant  $c > 0$  so that

$$d^s(q, 1) \leq cE^s(q).$$

This is the first claim of the lemma. We begin with the most difficult case  $s = 0$  and fix  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then, with  $\kappa = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x) \, dx$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
& \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)|q - \lambda|^2(x) \, dx \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)(|q|^2 + 1) \, dx - 2 \sup_{|\lambda|=1} \operatorname{Re} \lambda \overline{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) \, dx} \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)(|q|^2 - 1) \, dx - 2 \left( \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)q(x) \, dx \right| - \kappa \right) \\
&\leq c \left( \|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}(|q|^2 - 1)\|_{L^2} + \|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}q_x\|_{L^2} \right),
\end{aligned}$$

where the bound on the first term follows by (6.5), and the second term by (6.7). Let  $\delta \in (0, 1)$  be a small constant to be determined later and we define the set

$$Y_\delta = \{y \in \mathbb{R} \mid \|\eta(\cdot-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}(|q|^2 - 1)\|_{L^2} + \|\eta(\cdot-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}q_x\|_{L^2} \geq \delta > 0\}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
d^0(q, 1) &= \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)|q - \lambda|^2(x) \, dx \, dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
&\leq \left( \int_{Y_\delta^c} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)|q(x) - \lambda|^2 \, dx \, dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
&\quad + c \left( \int_{Y_\delta} \left( \|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}(|q|^2 - 1)\|_{L^2} + \|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}q_x\|_{L^2} \right) dy \right)^{\frac{1}{2}},
\end{aligned}$$

where the last term is bounded by  $c_\delta E^0(q)$  for some constant  $c_\delta$  depending on  $\delta$ .

It remains to consider those  $y \in Y_\delta^c$ . We regularize  $q$  by taking the convolution with the Schwartz function  $\frac{1}{\kappa} \operatorname{sech}^2(x)$ , and we can always decompose (as in Section 2)

$$q = b + q^1, \quad \text{with } b \in L^2, \quad q^1 = q * \left( \frac{1}{\kappa} \operatorname{sech}^2 \right) \in X^\sigma, \quad \forall \sigma \geq 0,$$



such that

$$\|\operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)b\|_{L^2} + \|\operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)(q^1)_x\|_{L^2} \leq c\|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{-1}q_x\|_{L^2}.$$

Fix  $y \in Y_\delta^C$  and in the following we will simply denote  $\eta(x-y)$  by  $\eta$ . We use Lemma 6.3 and then choose  $\delta$  small enough such that

$$\| |q^1(y)| - 1 \| \leq c(\|\eta\langle D \rangle^{-1}(|q|^2 - 1)\|_{L^2} + \|\eta\langle D \rangle^{-1}q_x\|_{L^2}) \leq c\delta < \frac{1}{2},$$

and thus  $|q^1(y)| \neq 0$ . Moreover (as in (2.3)),

$$\|q^1\|_{L^\infty(\{y-R, y+R\})} \leq c(1 + \|\eta\langle D \rangle^{-1}(|q|^2 - 1)\|_{L^2} + \|\eta\langle D \rangle^{-1}q_x\|_{L^2}) \leq c,$$

and

$$\left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta(|q^1|^2 - 1) dx \right| \leq \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta(|q|^2 - 1) dx \right| + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta(|q|^2 - |q^1|^2) dx,$$

where the second term on the righthand side above is bounded by

$$\left( \|\eta^{1/2}q\|_{L^2} + \|\eta^{1/2}q^1\|_{L^2} \right) \|\eta^{1/2}b\|_{L^2} \leq c\|\eta^{1/2}b\|_{L^2}.$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \operatorname{sech}^2(x-y) \left( q(x) - \frac{q^1(y)}{|q^1(y)|} \right) \right\|_{L_x^2} &\leq \|\operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)(q - q^1)(x)\|_{L_x^2} \\ &\quad + \|\operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)(q^1(x) - q^1(y))\|_{L_x^2} + \|\operatorname{sech}^2(x-y)(|q^1(y)| - 1)\|_{L_x^2}, \end{aligned}$$

we take the square and then integrate with respect to  $y$  in the set  $Y_\delta^C$ , to complete the proof of  $d^0(q, 1) \leq cE^0(q)$ . To deal with general  $s > 0$  we slightly modify the steps.

To prove the second claim (6.2) we consider the case when the right hand side is finite. By the triangle inequality,

$$\| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{s-1}} \leq \| |p|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{s-1}} + \| |q|^2 - |p|^2 \|_{H^{s-1}}.$$

We now verify

$$(6.10) \quad \| |q|^2 - |p|^2 \|_{H^{s-1}} \leq c\sqrt{1 + E^s(p) + E^s(q)}d^s(p, q).$$

Since for any  $|\lambda| = 1$ ,

$$|q|^2 - |p|^2 = \operatorname{Re}((\lambda q + p)(\overline{\lambda q - p})) = \operatorname{Re}((\lambda(b_q + q^1) + (b_p + p^1))(\overline{\lambda q - p})),$$

where  $q = b_q + q^1$  and  $p = b_p + p^1$  are decompositions above, we have for  $s \geq 0$

$$\| |q|^2 - |p|^2 \|_{H^{s-1}} \lesssim (\|(b_q, b_p)\|_{H^s} + \|((q^1)_x, (p^1)_x)\|_{H^{s-1}} + \|(q^1, p^1)\|_{L^\infty})\|\lambda q - p\|_{H^s},$$

and hence (6.10) follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \| |q|^2 - |p|^2 \|_{H^{s-1}}^2 &\leq c \int_{\mathbb{R}} \|\operatorname{sech}(x-y)(|q|^2 - |p|^2)(x)\|_{H_x^{s-1}}^2 dy \\ &\leq c(1 + E^s(p) + E^s(q)) \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \|\operatorname{sech}(x-y)(\lambda q - p)\|_{H^s}^2 dy \\ &= c(1 + E^s(p) + E^s(q))(d^s(q, p))^2. \end{aligned}$$

Then for any  $\epsilon > 0$  small enough, there exists  $c_\epsilon > 0$  such that

$$(6.11) \quad \begin{aligned} \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{s-1}} &\leq E^s(p) + c(1 + E^s(p) + E^s(q))^{\frac{1}{2}}d^s(p, q) \\ &\leq \epsilon E^s(q) + E^s(p) + c(1 + E^s(p))^{\frac{1}{2}}d^s(p, q) + c_\epsilon(d^s(p, q))^2. \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\eta \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ . We calculate

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \|\eta(x-y)f(x)\|_{L_x^2}^2 dy = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} |\eta(x-y)f(x)|^2 dx dy = \|\eta\|_{L^2}^2 \|f\|_{L^2}^2.$$

We take  $\|\eta\|_{L^2} = 1$ , such that

$$\begin{aligned} \|q'\|_{H^{s-1}} &= \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} \|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{s-1} q'(x)\|_{L^2_x}^2 dy \right)^{1/2} \\ &\leq \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} \|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{s-1} p'\|_{L^2}^2 dy \right)^{1/2} + \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{\lambda} \|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{s-1} (q' - \lambda p')\|_{L^2}^2 dy \right)^{1/2} \\ &= \|p'\|_{H^{s-1}} + \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} \inf_{\lambda} \|\eta(x-y)\langle D \rangle^{s-1} (q' - \lambda p')\|_{L^2}^2 dy \right)^{1/2}. \end{aligned}$$

Then by choosing  $\epsilon$  sufficiently small in (6.11), (6.2) follows from Lemma 6.2 (taking  $\eta = C \operatorname{sech}(\delta x)$  with  $C > 0$  such that  $\|\eta\|_{L^2} = 1$ ).  $\square$

**6.2. The analytic structure.** In this subsection we focus on the analytic structure of the metric space  $(X^s, d^s)$ .

**Theorem 6.2.** *Let  $\eta \in C_0^\infty([-1, 1])$  with  $\eta = 1$  on  $[-1/2, 1/2]$ . Let  $E^s(q) < \infty$ . There exist  $r$  and  $L$  depending only on  $E^s(q)$  such that the map*

$$(6.12) \quad \begin{aligned} B_r^s(q) \ni p &\mapsto ((a_n)_n, b) \in l_d^2 \times \tilde{H}^s, \text{ with} \\ \|(a_n)_n\|_{l_d^2} &= \left( \sum_n |a_n - a_{n-1}|^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\tilde{H}^s = \{b \in H^s \mid \langle \eta((x-4Ln)/L)b, \eta((x-4Ln)/L)q \rangle_{H^s} \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

is a biLipschitz map to its image. If  $d^s(q, q_1) < r$  then the coordinate change in the intersection is an analytic diffeomorphism with uniformly bounded derivatives.

*Proof.* We define

$$\|f\|_{H^{-1}(I)} = \sup \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}} fg \, dx \mid g \in C_0^\infty(I), \|g\|_{H^1} = 1 \right\}.$$

We denote

$$f^\alpha(x) = \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} f(x+y) \, dy, \quad \forall f \in L_{\text{loc}}^1(\mathbb{R}).$$

**Proposition 6.1.** *There exists  $\epsilon > 0$  such that*

$$\frac{1}{2} \leq |q^\alpha(x)| \leq 2 \text{ and } \|q\|_{L^2([x-\frac{1}{2}, x+\frac{1}{2}])} \geq \frac{1}{2},$$

if

$$\|q_x\|_{H^{-1}([x-\frac{1}{2}, x+\frac{1}{2}])} + \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}([x-1, x+1])} \leq \epsilon.$$

In particular, if the interval  $I$  satisfies

$$|I| \geq 6((E^s(q))^2/\epsilon^2 + 1),$$

then

$$\|q\|_{H^s(I)} \geq E^s(q)\epsilon^{-1}.$$

*Proof.* Without loss of generality we take  $x = 0$  and we consider

$$\|q - q^\alpha(0)\|_{L^2([-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}])}^2 = \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} |q(y) - q^\alpha(0)|^2 \, dy = \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} \left| q(y) - \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} q(x) \, dx \right|^2 \, dy,$$

which reads as

$$\begin{aligned} &\int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} \left( \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} \int_x^y q_x(z) \, dz \, dx \right) \left( \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} \int_{x'}^y \bar{q}_x(z') \, dz' \, dx' \right) \, dy \\ &:= \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} k(z, z') q_x(z) \bar{q}_x(z') \, dz \, dz'. \end{aligned}$$

In the above,

$$\begin{aligned} k(z, z') &= \int_{A(z, z')} \text{sign}(y-x)\text{sign}(y-x') dy dx dx', \\ A(z, z') &= \left( \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} < x < z < y < \frac{1}{2} \right\} \cap \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} < x' < z' < y < \frac{1}{2} \right\} \right) \\ &\cup \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} < x < z < y < z' < x' < \frac{1}{2} \right\} \cup \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} < x' < z' < y < z < x < \frac{1}{2} \right\} \\ &\cup \left( \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} < y < z < x < \frac{1}{2} \right\} \cap \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} < y < z' < x' < \frac{1}{2} \right\} \right), \end{aligned}$$

such that

$$\begin{aligned} k(z, z') &= \mathbf{1}_{z < z'}(z + \frac{1}{2})(\frac{1}{2} - z') + \mathbf{1}_{z' < z}(z' + \frac{1}{2})(\frac{1}{2} - z) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} - zz' - \frac{1}{2}|z - z'|, \quad \forall (z, z') \in [-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}] \times [-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}], \end{aligned}$$

which is symmetric and Lipschitz continuous with

$$k(\pm \frac{1}{2}, z') = k(z, \pm \frac{1}{2}) = 0,$$

and smooth away from the diagonal with uniformly bounded derivatives of all orders.

We claim that

$$(6.13) \quad \|q - q^a(0)\|_{L^2([-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}])} \leq c \|q_x\|_{H^{-1}([-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}])},$$

and it is equivalent to say that the integral operator with the integral kernel  $k(z, z')$  maps from  $H^{-1}$  to  $H_0^1$ . That is, the integral operator with the integral kernel

$$\partial_z k(z, z') = -z' + \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{1}_{z < z'} - \mathbf{1}_{z' < z})$$

maps from  $H^{-1}$  to  $L^2$ . This is equivalent to the adjoint operator mapping from  $L^2$  to  $H_0^1$ , which, by  $\partial_z k(z, \pm \frac{1}{2}) = 0$ , is equivalent to the fact that

$$\partial_{zz'} k(z, z') = -1 + \delta_{z-z'}$$

is the integral kernel of an operator mapping from  $L^2$  to  $L^2$ : This is obvious.

Let  $\eta \in C_0^\infty([-1, 1])$  such that  $0 \leq \eta \leq 1$ ,  $\eta = \frac{1}{2}$  on  $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$  and  $\int \eta = 1$ . Then

$$\left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta(y) (|q(x+y)|^2 - 1) dy \right| \leq c \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}([x-1, x+1])},$$

and hence by  $\frac{1}{2} \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} |q(x+y)|^2 dy \leq \int \eta |q(x+\cdot)|^2 = \int \eta (|q(x+\cdot)|^2 - 1) + \int \eta$ ,

$$|q^a(x)| + \|q\|_{L^2([x-\frac{1}{2}, x+\frac{1}{2}])} \leq c(1 + \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}([x-1, x+1])})^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Thus with a different test function, still denoted by  $\eta$ , with  $\eta \in C_0^\infty([-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}])$  and  $\eta = 1$  on  $[-\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}]$ ,  $\int \eta = 1$ ,  $0 \leq \eta \leq 1$ , we have for any  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \| |q^a(x)|^2 - 1 \| &\leq \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta(y) (|q(x+y)|^2 - 1) dy \right| + \int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta(y) |q^a(x) + q(x+y)| |q^a(x) - q(x+y)| dy \\ &\leq c \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}([x-\frac{1}{2}, x+\frac{1}{2}])} + c(1 + \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}([x-1, x+1])}) \|q_x\|_{H^{-1}([x-\frac{1}{2}, x+\frac{1}{2}])}, \end{aligned}$$

where we used (6.13) to control  $\|q^a(x) - q(x+\cdot)\|_{L^2([-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}])}$ . Therefore there exists  $\varepsilon < 0$  such that if  $\|q_x\|_{H^{-1}([x-\frac{1}{2}, x+\frac{1}{2}])} + \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}([x-1, x+1])} \leq \varepsilon$  then

$$\frac{1}{2} \leq |q^a(x)| \leq 2 \text{ and } \|q\|_{L^2([x-\frac{1}{2}, x+\frac{1}{2}])} \geq \frac{1}{2}.$$

By Tschebycheff's inequality we have

$$\#\{n : \|q_x\|_{H^{-1}([2n-1, 2n+1])} + \| |q|^2 - 1 \|_{H^{-1}([2n-1, 2n+1])} \geq \varepsilon\} \leq \varepsilon^{-2} (E^s(q))^2,$$

and hence if  $|I| \geq 6(\varepsilon^{-2}(E^s(q))^2 + 1)$  then for all  $s \geq 0$ ,

$$\|q\|_{H^s(I)}^2 \geq \|q\|_{L^2(I)}^2 \geq \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{2}{3} |I| \geq \varepsilon^{-2}(E^s(q))^2 + 1.$$

□

After these preparation we turn to the crucial construction. Let

$$L = 6(\varepsilon^{-2}(E^s(q))^2 + 1)$$

in the sequel. We replace  $\text{sech}(x)$  by  $\text{sech}_L(x) = \frac{e^L}{2} \varphi * (\text{sech}(\max\{L, |x|\}))$  for some fixed smooth compactly supported function  $\varphi$ . This function is close to 1 on an interval of length  $2L$ . For  $q \in X^s$ , by Proposition 6.1, we have

$$(6.14) \quad \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)q(x)\|_{H_x^s}(y) \geq \frac{1}{2}E^s(q)/\varepsilon, \quad \forall y \in \mathbb{R}.$$

We replace  $\text{sech}$  by  $\text{sech}_L$  in the definition of the distance. This leads to an equivalent metric with constants of size  $e^L/2$ . Expand the quantity in the integrand in the definition of  $d^s(q, p)$  as

$$\begin{aligned} \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)(\lambda q - p)\|_{H_x^s}^2 &= \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)q\|_{H_x^s}^2 + \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)p\|_{H_x^s}^2 \\ &\quad - 2\text{Re}[\bar{\lambda}\langle \text{sech}_L(x-y)p, \text{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle_{H_x^s}]. \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\mu = \mu(y) := \langle \text{sech}_L(x-y)p, \text{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle_{H_x^s}.$$

If  $\mu \neq 0$ , we take  $\lambda = \lambda(y) = \frac{\mu(y)}{|\mu(y)|}$  such that

$$\inf_{|\lambda|=1} \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)(\lambda q - p)\|_{H_x^s}^2 = \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)q\|_{H_x^s}^2 + \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)p\|_{H_x^s}^2 - 2|\mu(y)|.$$

Suppose that  $d^s(q, p) \leq \frac{1}{32}E^s(q)/\varepsilon$ . Then for any  $y_0 \in \mathbb{R}$  and the interval  $I_0 = [y_0 - \frac{1}{2}, y_0 + \frac{1}{2}]$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} &e^{-\frac{1}{2}} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \|\text{sech}_L(x-y_0)(\lambda q(x) - p(x))\|_{H_x^s}^2 \\ &\leq \int_{I_0} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} e^{-|y-y_0|} \|\text{sech}_L(x-y_0)(\lambda q(x) - p(x))\|_{H_x^s}^2 dy \\ &\leq \int_{I_0} \inf_{|\lambda|=1} \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)(\lambda q(x) - p(x))\|_{H_x^s}^2 dy \leq d^s(q, p) \leq \frac{1}{32}E^s(q)/\varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

This together with (6.14) implies that given  $y$  there exists  $\lambda$  with modulus 1 so that

$$(6.15) \quad \|\text{sech}_L(\lambda q - p)\|_{H^s} \leq \frac{1}{4}E^s(q)/\varepsilon \leq \frac{1}{2}\|\text{sech}_L(x-y)q\|_{H^s},$$

and hence

$$(6.16) \quad \begin{aligned} |\mu| &= |\langle \text{sech}_L(x-y)p, \text{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle_{H_x^s}| \\ &\geq \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)q\|_{H^s}^2 - |\langle \text{sech}_L(x-y)(p - \lambda q), \text{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle_{H_x^s}| \\ &\geq \|\text{sech}_L(x-y)q\|_{H^s}^2 - \frac{1}{2}\|\text{sech}_L(x-y)q\|_{H_x^s}^2 = \frac{1}{2}\|\text{sech}_L(x-y)q\|_{H^s}^2. \end{aligned}$$

We are going to study the map

$$p(x) \mapsto \lambda(y) = \frac{\mu(y)}{|\mu(y)|},$$

in a small ball around  $q$  with the radius depending only on  $E^s(q)$ .

**Lemma 6.4.** *If  $d^s(q, p) < \frac{1}{32}E^s(q)/\varepsilon$ , then*

$$\|\lambda_y\|_{H^N} \leq c_N d^s(q, p), \quad \forall N \in \mathbb{N}.$$

*Proof.* We calculate

$$\lambda_y = \frac{\mu_y}{|\mu|} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{|\mu|^2 \mu_y + \mu^2 \bar{\mu}_y}{|\mu|^3} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\mu(\bar{\mu}\mu_y - \mu\bar{\mu}_y)}{|\mu|^3}.$$

If  $p = \lambda q$ , then  $\lambda_y = 0$ .

We differentiate  $\mu$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} \mu' &= \frac{d}{dy} \langle \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)p, \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle \\ &= -\langle \operatorname{sech}'_L(x-y)p, \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle - \langle \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)p, \operatorname{sech}'_L(x-y)q \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

and for notational simplicity we denote  $\operatorname{sech}_L(x-y) = \rho$  and  $\operatorname{sech}'_L(x-y) = \rho'$  such that  $\mu = \langle \rho p, \rho q \rangle$  and  $\mu' = -\langle \rho' p, \rho q \rangle - \langle \rho p, \rho' q \rangle$  in the following of the proof. We expand  $p = \lambda q + (p - \lambda q)$  with  $|\lambda(y)| = 1$  to see that the difference  $\bar{\mu}\mu' - \mu\bar{\mu}'$  is the summation of

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle \rho(\overline{p - \lambda q}), \rho \bar{q} \rangle \mu' - \bar{\lambda} \langle \rho \bar{q}, \rho \bar{q} \rangle (\langle \rho'(p - \lambda q), \rho q \rangle + \langle \rho(p - \lambda q), \rho' q \rangle) \\ &- \langle \rho(p - \lambda q), \rho q \rangle \bar{\mu}' + \lambda \langle \rho q, \rho q \rangle (\langle \rho'(\overline{p - \lambda q}), \rho \bar{q} \rangle + \langle \rho(\overline{p - \lambda q}), \rho' \bar{q} \rangle) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} &-\bar{\lambda} \langle \rho \bar{q}, \rho \bar{q} \rangle (\lambda \langle \rho' q, \rho q \rangle + \lambda \langle \rho' q, \rho q \rangle) + \lambda \langle \rho q, \rho q \rangle (\bar{\lambda} \langle \rho' \bar{q}, \rho \bar{q} \rangle + \langle \rho \bar{q}, \rho' \bar{q} \rangle) \\ &= -\|\rho q\|_{H^s}^2 2\operatorname{Re} \langle \rho' q, \rho q \rangle + \|\rho q\|_{H^s}^2 2\operatorname{Re} \langle \rho' q, \rho q \rangle = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$|\lambda_y| \leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\rho_1, \rho_2, \rho_3, \rho_4 \in \{\rho, \rho'\}} \frac{\|\rho_1(p - \lambda q)\|_{H^s} \|\rho_2 q\|_{H^s} (|\langle \rho_3 p, \rho_4 q \rangle| + |\langle \rho q, \rho q \rangle|)}{|\mu|^2},$$

and by (6.15), (6.16),

$$|\lambda_y| \leq c \|\rho(p - \lambda q)\|_{H^s}, \text{ and hence } \|\lambda_y\|_{L^2} \leq cd^s(q, p).$$

We easily obtain the claimed estimates for higher order derivatives.  $\square$

Next we study what happens when we modify the weight. Let  $\eta \in C_0^\infty([-1, 1])$  with  $\eta = 1$  on  $[-1/2, 1/2]$  and we define

$$\tilde{\mu} = \tilde{\mu}(y) = \langle \eta(\cdot - y)/L p, \eta(\cdot - y)/L q \rangle_{H^s}, \quad \tilde{\lambda} = \tilde{\lambda}(y) = \frac{\tilde{\mu}(y)}{|\tilde{\mu}(y)|}.$$

**Lemma 6.5.** *Assume the same hypotheses as in Lemma 6.4, then*

$$\|\tilde{\lambda} - \lambda\|_{H^N} \leq c_N d^0(q, p), \quad \forall N \in \mathbb{N},$$

*if the righthand side is bounded by a constant depending on the energy.*

*Proof.* Since

$$|\tilde{\lambda} - \lambda| = \left| \frac{|\tilde{\mu}(y)|\mu(y) - |\mu(y)|\tilde{\mu}(y)}{|\mu(y)||\tilde{\mu}(y)|} \right|,$$

this amount to bounding the difference

$$A = |\tilde{\mu}(y)|\mu(y) - |\mu(y)|\tilde{\mu}(y).$$

This vanishes again for  $\lambda q$  and we can continue as in the proof of Lemma 6.4 since

$$|A| \leq A_1 + A_2$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} A_1 &= \left| \langle \eta(x-y)p, \eta(x-y)q \rangle \langle \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)p, \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \langle \eta(x-y)\lambda q, \eta(x-y)q \rangle \langle \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)\lambda q, \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle \right| \\ &\leq \left| \langle \eta(x-y)(p - \lambda q), \eta(x-y)q \rangle \right| \left| \langle \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q, \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle \right| \\ &\quad + \left| \langle \eta(x-y)q, \eta(x-y)q \rangle \right| \left| \langle \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)(p - \lambda q), \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle \right| \end{aligned}$$

$$A_2 = \left| \langle \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)p, \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle \langle \eta(x-y)p, \eta(x-y)q \rangle \right. \\ \left. - \langle \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)\lambda q, \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)q \rangle \langle \eta(x-y)\lambda q, \eta(x-y)q \rangle \right|.$$

Bounding the derivatives is done in the same fashion as for  $\lambda$ .  $\square$

There exists  $r < \frac{1}{32}E^s(q)/\varepsilon$  small enough such that for any  $p \in B_r^s(q)$ , we can construct a function  $\theta = \theta(x)$  using the function  $\tilde{\lambda} = \tilde{\lambda}(y)$  as follows:

- (1) We choose a sequence  $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}$  so that

$$e^{ia_n} = \tilde{\lambda}(4nL)$$

and

$$\sum_n |a_{n-1} - a_n|^2 < CLd^s(q, p) < \frac{1}{2}$$

where the latter is satisfied for small enough  $r$ . The sequence is unique up to the addition of a multiple of  $2\pi$ .

- (2) We fix a smooth partition of unity

$$\sum_n \rho((x - 4Ln)/L) = 1 \text{ with } \rho = 1 \text{ on } [-1, 1] = \operatorname{Supp}(\eta)$$

and define

$$\theta(x) = \sum a_n \rho((x - 4Ln)/L).$$

- (3) We define the map

$$p \rightarrow e^{-i\theta} p - q =: b.$$

This defines the map (6.12) in Theorem 6.2:

$$B_r^s(q) \ni p \mapsto ((a_n)_n, b) \in l_d^2 \times \tilde{H}^s.$$

Indeed, it suffices to show  $b \in \tilde{H}^s$ . Since

$$\| \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)b(x) \|_{H_x^s} \leq \| \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)((\chi(y))^{-1}p(x) - q(x)) \|_{H_x^s} \\ + \| \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)((\chi(y))^{-1} - (\tilde{\chi}(x))^{-1})p(x) \|_{H_x^s} \\ + \| \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)((\tilde{\chi}(x))^{-1} - e^{-i\theta(x)})p(x) \|_{H_x^s},$$

by Lemma 6.2, Lemma 6.4 and Lemma 6.5, we derive that

$$\|b\|_{H^s}^2 \lesssim \int \| \operatorname{sech}_L(x-y)b \|_{H_x^s}^2 dy \lesssim d^s(q, p).$$

Furthermore, it is straightforward to calculate

$$\langle \eta((x - 4nL)/L)b, \eta((x - 4nL)/L)q \rangle \\ = e^{-ia_n} \langle \eta((x - 4nL)/L)p, \eta((x - 4nL)/L)q \rangle - \langle \eta((x - 4nL)/L)q, \eta((x - 4nL)/L)q \rangle \\ = |\tilde{\mu}(4nL)| - \|\eta(\cdot - 4nL)/L\|_{H^s}^2 \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Let us consider the map

$$l_d^2 \times \tilde{H}^s \ni ((a_n)_n, b) \mapsto e^{i\theta}(q + b),$$

where the function  $\theta$  is constructed as above from  $\theta(4nL) = a_n$ . Since

$$|e^{i\theta}(q + b)|^2 - |e^{i\tilde{\theta}}(q + \tilde{b})|^2 = |b|^2 - |\tilde{b}|^2 + 2\operatorname{Re}[\bar{q}(b - \tilde{b})],$$

we derive that

$$\| |e^{i\theta}(q + b)|^2 - |e^{i\tilde{\theta}}(q + \tilde{b})|^2 \|_{H^{s-1}} \leq c \|b - \tilde{b}\|_{H^s}.$$

Furthermore, we also derive (expanding the norm)

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left\| \operatorname{sech}(x-y) \left( e^{i\tilde{\theta}(y)-i\theta(y)} e^{i\theta(x)}(q+b) - e^{i\tilde{\theta}(x)}(q+\tilde{b}) \right) \right\|_{H_x^s}^2 dy \\ & \leq c(\|b-\tilde{b}\|_{H^s}^2 + \|(a_n) - (\tilde{a}_n)\|_n^2). \end{aligned}$$

On the other side, the map

$$B_r^s(q) \ni p \mapsto \tilde{\lambda}(y) = \frac{\langle \eta((x-y)/L)p, \eta((x-y)/L)q \rangle_{H_x^s}}{|\cdot|} \in |D|^{-1}H^N$$

and the map

$$p \mapsto b = e^{-i\theta} p - q$$

are Lipschitz continuous. This proves the biLipschitz continuity.

Finally, the following two maps describing the coordinate changes are smooth:

$$\begin{aligned} ((a_n)_n, b) & \mapsto \tilde{\lambda}_1(y) = \frac{\langle \eta((x-y)/L)(e^{i\theta(x)}(q+b)), \eta((x-y)/L)q_1 \rangle_{H_x^s}}{|\cdot|} \in |D|^{-1}H^N, \\ ((a_n)_n, b) & \mapsto b_1 = e^{i\theta-i\theta_1}(q+b) - q_1. \end{aligned}$$

□

#### APPENDIX A. CALCULATION OF THE QUADRATIC TERM

We prove Lemma 5.1 here: We derive the expansion (5.16) of  $\ln T_c^{-1}$  from the expansion (3.22) on the imaginary axis (5.7). It suffices to show

$$(A.1) \quad \Phi + T_2 = \tilde{T}_2 + \tilde{T}_3, \quad \text{when } (\lambda, z) = (i\sqrt{\tau^2/4 - 1}, i\tau/2), \quad \zeta = \lambda + z, \quad \tau \geq 2,$$

where  $\Phi$ ,  $T_2 = \wedge$ ,  $\tilde{T}_2$  are given in (3.23), (5.13), (5.17) respectively:

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi & := -\frac{i}{2z} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)^2}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} dx + \frac{1}{2z\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{q'\bar{q}(|q|^2 - 1)}{(|q|^2 - \zeta^2)} dx, \\ \wedge & = \int_{x < y} e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} q_3(x) q_2(y) dx dy, \\ \tilde{T}_2(i\sigma) & = \frac{1}{4z^2} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( (|q|^2 - 1)(y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) + q'(y)\bar{q}'(x) \right) dx dy \\ & \quad - i \frac{z + \zeta}{4z^3\zeta^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{Im} (q'\bar{q})(|q|^2 - 1) dx + \frac{1}{8z^3\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( q'(y)\bar{q}'(x) - \bar{q}'(y)q'(x) \right) dx dy. \end{aligned}$$

Here,  $\tilde{T}_3$  identifies the summation of the cubic terms in  $\ln T_c^{-1}$  and reads as the finite linear combination of the integrals of type (5.18), that is, of the cubic terms from the following set:

$$(H) \quad \left\{ \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left( \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{\tau^2} \right)^2 h dx, \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} h_1(y) \left( \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{\tau^2} h_2 \right)(x) dx dy, \right. \\ \left. \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{\tau^2} h_1 \right)(y) h_2(x) dx dy, \right. \\ \left. \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} h_1(y) \int_x^y \frac{q' \text{ or } \bar{q}'}{\tau} dm h_2(x) dx dy \mid h, h_1, h_2 \in O \right\}.$$

Here  $\int_{x < y} (e^{\varphi(y) - \varphi(x)} - e^{2iz(y-x)}) q_2(y) q_3(x) dx dy$  is defined in (5.15) and the set  $O = \{P \cdot \frac{1}{\tau}(|q|^2 - 1), P \cdot \frac{1}{\tau}q', P \cdot \frac{1}{\tau}\bar{q}'\}$  (defined in (5.11)) where  $P$  is polynomial of form (5.10):  $P = P(\frac{1}{\omega^{-2}|q|^{2+1}}, \frac{1}{\tau}q, \frac{1}{\tau}\bar{q}, \frac{1}{\tau^2}(|q|^2 - 1))$ .

For notational simplicity, we will always denote  $H$  to be the finite summation of some cubic terms from the above set (H), which may change from line to line. Thus the goal equality (A.1) reads as

$$(A.2) \quad \Phi + \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} q_2(y) q_3(x) dx dy = \tilde{T}_2 + H,$$

and we are going to decompose the quantity  $\Phi + \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} q_2(y) q_3(x) dx dy$  into the quadratic and cubic terms in the following. We will use freely the equality in (3.17):

$$\frac{1}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} = -\frac{1}{2z\zeta} + \frac{|q|^2 - 1}{2z\zeta(|q|^2 - \zeta^2)}.$$

We can first rewrite  $\Phi$  as the finite summation of quadratic and cubic terms:

$$(A.3) \quad \begin{aligned} \Phi &= \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1)^2 dx - \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)^3}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} dx \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} q' \bar{q} (|q|^2 - 1) dx + \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{q' \bar{q} (|q|^2 - 1)^2}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} dx \\ &= \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1)^2 dx - \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta^2} \int_{\mathbb{R}} q' \bar{q} (|q|^2 - 1) dx + H. \end{aligned}$$

Recall  $q_2, q_3$  defined in (\*) such that the product  $q_2(y)q_3(x)$  reads as

$$\begin{aligned} q_2(y)q_3(x) &= \frac{q'(y)\bar{q}'(x)}{4z^2} - \frac{q'(y)}{4z^2} \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)\bar{q}'(x)}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} + \frac{\zeta}{2z} \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)q'(y)}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} \frac{\bar{q}'(x)}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2} \\ &\quad + i\zeta \left( \frac{q'}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}(y) \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)\bar{q}}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}(x) - \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)q}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}(y) \frac{\bar{q}'}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}(x) \right) \\ &\quad + \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)q}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}(y) \frac{(|q|^2 - 1)\bar{q}}{|q|^2 - \zeta^2}(x). \end{aligned}$$

We decompose  $\int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} q_2(y)q_3(x) dx dy$  into

$$(A.4) \quad \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} q_2(y)q_3(x) dx dy = \frac{1}{4z^2} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} q'(y)\bar{q}'(x) dx dy + G + H,$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{with } G &= \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( q'(y) \left( (|q|^2 - 1)\bar{q}(x) - (|q|^2 - 1)q(y)\bar{q}'(x) \right) dx dy \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta^2} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( (|q|^2 - 1)q(y) \left( (|q|^2 - 1)\bar{q}(x) \right) dx dy \right). \right. \end{aligned}$$

By virtue of  $q(y) - q(x) = \int_x^y q'(m) dm$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} G &= \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( (q'\bar{q})(y) (|q|^2 - 1)(x) - (|q|^2 - 1)(y) (q\bar{q}')(x) \right) dx dy \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta^2} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} (|q|^2 - 1)(y) \left( (|q|^2 - 1)|q|^2(x) \right) dx dy + H, \end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$\begin{aligned} G &= \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( \operatorname{Re}(q'\bar{q})(y) (|q|^2 - 1)(x) - (|q|^2 - 1)(y) \operatorname{Re}(q\bar{q}')(x) \right) dx dy \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( \operatorname{Im}(q'\bar{q})(y) (|q|^2 - 1)(x) + (|q|^2 - 1)(y) \operatorname{Im}(q\bar{q}')(x) \right) dx dy \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta^2} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} (|q|^2 - 1)(y) (|q|^2 - 1)(x) dx dy + H. \end{aligned}$$



Noticing  $2\operatorname{Re}(q'\bar{q}) = (|q|^2 - 1)'$  and the integration by parts

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} g(y)h(x) \, dx \, dy &= \frac{i}{2z} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} gh \, dx - \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} g(y)h'(x) \, dx \, dy \right) \\ &= \frac{i}{2z} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}} gh \, dx + \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} g'(y)h(x) \, dx \, dy \right), \end{aligned}$$

we derive that

$$\begin{aligned} G &= \frac{1}{2z\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} (|q|^2 - 1)(y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) \, dx \, dy - \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1)^2 \, dx \\ &+ \frac{i}{4z^3\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( \operatorname{Im}(q'\bar{q})(y)\operatorname{Re}(q'\bar{q})(x) - \operatorname{Re}(q'\bar{q})(y)\operatorname{Im}(q'\bar{q})(x) \right) \, dx \, dy \\ &- \frac{i}{4z^3\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{Im}(q'\bar{q})(|q|^2 - 1) \, dx + \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta^2} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} (|q|^2 - 1)(y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) \, dx \, dy + H. \end{aligned}$$

Hence by  $\frac{1}{2z\zeta} + \frac{1}{4z^2\zeta^2} = \frac{1}{4z^2}$

$$\begin{aligned} G &= \frac{1}{4z^2} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} (|q|^2 - 1)(y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) \, dx \, dy - \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1)^2 \, dx \\ &+ \frac{1}{8z^3\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( (q'\bar{q})(y)(q\bar{q}')(x) - (q\bar{q}')(y)(q'\bar{q})(x) \right) \, dx \, dy \\ &- \frac{i}{4z^3\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{Im}(q'\bar{q})(|q|^2 - 1) \, dx + H, \end{aligned}$$

which, by virtue of  $q(y) - q(x) = \int_x^y q'(m)dm$  and  $|q|^2 = (|q|^2 - 1) + 1$  again, reads as

$$\begin{aligned} G &= \frac{1}{4z^2} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} (|q|^2 - 1)(y)(|q|^2 - 1)(x) \, dx \, dy - \frac{i}{4z^2\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|q|^2 - 1)^2 \, dx \\ &+ \frac{1}{8z^3\zeta} \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} \left( q'(y)\bar{q}'(x) - \bar{q}'(y)q'(x) \right) \, dx \, dy - \frac{i}{4z^3\zeta} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{Im}(q'\bar{q})(|q|^2 - 1) \, dx + H. \end{aligned}$$

To conclude, we arrive at (A.2) and hence (A.1) by summing up (A.3) and (A.4) (noticing again  $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{Re}(q'\bar{q})(|q|^2 - 1) \, dx = 0$ ).

#### REFERENCES

- [1] M.J. Ablowitz, D.J. Kaup, A.C. Newell and H. Segur, The inverse scattering transform-Fourier analysis for nonlinear problems, *Studies in Appl. Math.*, **53** (1974), 249–315.
- [2] S. Axler, P. Bourdon and W. Ramey. *Harmonic function theory*. Graduate Texts in Mathematics, Vol. 137, Second, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2001, pp. xii+259,
- [3] F. Béthuel, P. Gravejat and J.-C. Saut, Existence and properties of travelling waves for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation. *Stationary and time dependent Gross-Pitaevskii equations* (eds A. Farina and J.-C. Saut), Contemp. Math., Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, **473** (2008), 55–103.
- [4] F. Béthuel, P. Gravejat, J.-C. Saut and D. Smets, Orbital stability of the black soliton for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation. *Indiana Univ. Math. J.*, **57**(2008), 2611-2642.
- [5] F. Béthuel, P. Gravejat and D. Smets, Asymptotic stability in the energy space for dark solitons of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation. *Ann. Sci. Éc. Norm. Supér. (4)*, **48** (2015), 1327–1381.
- [6] F. Béthuel, P. Gravejat, J.-C. Saut and D. Smets, On the Korteweg-de Vries long-wave approximation of the Gross-Pitaevskii equation I. *Int. Math. Res. Not.*, **14** (2009), 2700–2748.
- [7] F. Béthuel and J.-C. Saut, Travelling waves for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation I. *Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Phys. Théor.*, **70** (1999), 147-238.
- [8] T. Buckmaster and H. Koch, The Korteweg–de Vries equation at  $H^{-1}$  regularity. *Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Anal. Non Linéaire*, **32** (2015), 1071–1098.

- [9] T. Cazenave, *Semilinear Schrödinger equations*. Courant Lecture Notes in Mathematics, 10, New York University, Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences, New York; American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2003.
- [10] D. Chiron, Travelling waves for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation in dimension larger than two. *Nonlinear Anal.*, **58** (2004), 175-204.
- [11] S. Cuccagna and R. Jenkins, On the asymptotic stability of  $N$ -soliton solutions of the defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, **343** (2016), 921–969.
- [12] P. Deift and X. Zhou, A steepest descent method for oscillatory Riemann-Hilbert problems. Asymptotics for the mKdV equations. *Ann. Math.*, **137** (1993), 295-368.
- [13] F. Demontis, B. Prinari, C. van der Mee and F. Vitale, The inverse scattering transform for the defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equations with nonzero boundary conditions. *Stud. Appl. Math.*, **131**(2013), 1–40.
- [14] L.D. Faddeev and L.A. Takhtajan, *Hamiltonian methods in the theory of solitons* (translated from the 1986 Russian original by A.G. Reyman). Reprint of the 1987 English edition. Classics in Mathematics. Springer, Berlin, 2007.
- [15] C. Gallo, Schrödinger group on Zhidkov spaces. *Adv. Differential Equations*, **9** (2004), 509–538.
- [16] C. Gallo, The Cauchy problem for defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equations with non-vanishing initial data at infinity. *Comm. Partial Differential Equations*, **33** (2008), 729–771.
- [17] P. Gérard, The Cauchy problem for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation. *Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Anal. Non Linéaire*, **23** (2006), 765–779.
- [18] P. Gérard, The Gross-Pitaevskii equation in the energy space. *Stationary and time dependent Gross-Pitaevskii equations* (eds A. Farina and J.-C. Saut), Contemp. Math., Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, **473** (2008), 129–148.
- [19] P. Gérard and Z. Zhang, Orbital stability of traveling waves for the one-dimensional Gross-Pitaevskii equation. *J. Math. Pures Appl. (9)*, **91** (2009), 178–210.
- [20] P. Gravejat, A non-existence result for supersonic travelling waves in the Gross-Pitaevskii equation. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, **243** (2003), 93-103.
- [21] E.P. Gross, Hydrodynamics of a superfluid condensate. *J. Math. Phys.*, **4** (1963), 195–207.
- [22] S. Gustafson, K. Nakanishi, and T.-P. Tsai, Scattering for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation. *Math. Res. Lett.*, **13** (2006), 273-285.
- [23] S. Gustafson, K. Nakanishi, and T.-P. Tsai, Scattering theory for the Gross-Pitaevskii equation in three dimensions. *Commun. Contemp. Math.*, **11** (2009), 657-707.
- [24] M. Hadac, S. Herr and H. Koch, Well-posedness and scattering for the KP-II equation in a critical space. *Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Anal. Non Linéaire*, **26** (2009), 917-941.
- [25] C. E. Kenig, G. Ponce and L. Vega, Well-posedness and scattering results for the generalized Korteweg-de Vries equation via the contraction principle. *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.*, **46** (1993), 527-620.
- [26] C. E. Kenig, G. Ponce and L. Vega, Well-posedness of the initial value problem for the Korteweg-de Vries equation. *J. Amer. Math. Soc.*, **4** (1991), 323-347.
- [27] R. Killip and M. Visan, KdV is wellposed in  $H^{-1}$ . *Ann. Math.*, **190** (2019), 249-305.
- [28] R. Killip, M. Visan and X. Zhang, Low regularity conservation laws for integrable PDE. *Geom. Funct. Anal.*, **28** (2018), 1062-1090.
- [29] Y.S. Kivshar and B. Luther-Davies, Dark optical solitons: physics and applications. *Phys. Rep.*, **298** (1998), 81–197.
- [30] T. Kappeler, Thomas, P. Perry, M. Shubin and P. Topalov, The Miura map on the line. *Int. Math. Res. Not.*, **50** (2005), 3091-3133.
- [31] H. Koch and D. Tataru, Conserved energies for the cubic NLS in 1-D. *Duke Math. J.*, **167** (2018), 3207–3313.
- [32] Z. Lin, Stability and instability of traveling solitonic bubbles. *Adv. Differential Equations*, **7**(2002), 897-918.
- [33] M. Lothaire, *Combinatorics on words*. Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications, Vol. 17. A collective work by Dominique Perrin, Jean Berstel, Christian Choffrut, Robert Cori, Dominique Foata, Jean Eric Pin, Guiseppe Pirillo, Christophe Reutenauer, Marcel-P. Schützenberger, Jacques Sakarovitch and Imre Simon, With a foreword by Roger Lyndon, Edited and with a preface by Perrin. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Reading, Mass., 1983, pp.xix+238.

- [34] M. Maris, Traveling waves for nonlinear Schrödinger equations with nonzero conditions at infinity. *Ann. Math.*, **178**(2013), 1-76.
- [35] L.P. Pitaevskii, Vortex lines in an imperfect Bose gas. *Sov. Phys. JETP*, **13** (1961), 451–454.
- [36] C. Reutenauer, *Free Lie algebras*. London Mathematical Society Monographs. New Series. Vol. 7. Oxford Science Publications, The Clarendon Press, Oxford University Press, New York, 1993, pp. xviii+269.
- [37] V.E. Zakharov and A.B. Shabat, Interaction between solitons in a stable medium. *Sov. Phys. JETP*, **37** (1973), 823–828.
- [38] P.E. Zhidkov, The Cauchy problem for the nonlinear Schrödinger equation. *Joint Inst. Nuclear Res., Dubna*, (1987), 15 pp.
- [39] P.E. Zhidkov, *Korteweg-de Vries and nonlinear Schrödinger equations: qualitative theory*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, vol. 1756, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2001.

(H. Koch) MATHEMATICAL INSTITUTE, UNIVERSITY BONN, ENDENICHER ALLEE 60, 53115 BONN, GERMANY

*E-mail address:* `koch@math.uni-bonn.de`

(X. Liao) INSTITUTE OF ANALYSIS, KARLSRUHE INSTITUTE FOR TECHNOLOGY, ENGLERSTRASSE 2, 76131 KARLSRUHE, GERMANY

*E-mail address:* `xian.liao@kit.edu`